HANDBOOK



308

PEUGEOT

Service Box

http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com

PEUGEOT's SERVICE BOX Internet site permits easy and free consultation of your vehicle documentation on line.

Simple and user friendly, SERVICE BOX allows you access:

- to your Handbook,
- to previous Vehicle documentation.

@ Your vehicle lives on the Internet!

Access the latest information available.

Connect to http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com:

› select your language,

› click on the link in the "Private customer access" zone to consult the Vehicle documentation,

A window opens giving access to all of the handbooks...

› select your vehicle,

  › choose its body type then the date of publication of the handbook,

› finally, click on the item which is of interest to you.

Please note the following point:

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system. Please note this specific warning. It is advisable to contact a PEUGEOT dealer to be shown the recommended equipment and accessories.

PEUGEOT

308

Thank you for choosing a 308, symbol of confidence, passion and inspiration.

This handbook has been designed to enable you to make the most of your 308 saloon or 308 SW.

On the first few pages, you will find a detailed summary, followed by a quick reference guide intended to make it easier for you to become familiar with your vehicle.

All of the details specific to your 308, comfort, safety, driving, are then presented in this handbook, to increase your appreciation of the vehicle and... for the drive of your life.

At the end of the handbook, a visual search enables you to identify the special features in relation to the outline illustration of your vehicle, saloon or SW.

Each model may only be fitted with some of the equipment mentioned in this handbook, depending on the specification, the models, the versions and the characteristics particular to the country in which it is sold.

Key

This key will enable you to distinguish the special features of your vehicle:



308 saloon



308 SW with rear bench seat



308 SW with individual rear seats

Key

Warning:
this symbol marks warnings which it is essential to observe for your own safety, for the safety of others or to avoid any risk of damaging your vehicle.

Information:
this symbol draws your attention to additional information for better use of your vehicle.

Protection of the environment:
this symbol accompanies advice relating to protection of the environment.

Page reference:
this symbol invites you to refer to the pages which provide details of the function.

CONTENTS

FAMILIARISATION 4 → 21

1 INSTRUMENTS and CONTROLS 22 → 39

- Instrument panels 22
- Indicator and warning lamps 26
- Indicators 34
- Instrument panel buttons 38

2 MULTIFUNCTION SCREENS 40 → 55

- Screens without audio equipment 40
- Screens with audio equipment 42
- 16/9 retractable colour screen (Peugeot Connect Navigation) 47
- 16/9 high definition retractable colour screen (Peugeot Connect Media) 49
- Trip computer 52

3 COMFORT 56 → 77

- Ventilation 56
- Heating 58
- Manual air conditioning 58
- Rear screen demist - defrost 60
- Dual-zone digital air conditioning 61
- Front seats 63
- Rear seats 67
- Seat modularity 73
- Mirrors 75
- Steering wheel adjustment 77

4 ACCESS 78 → 92

- Remote control key 78
- Alarm 82
- Electric windows 84
- Doors 86
- Boot 88
- Opening rear screen 89
- Panoramic sunroof 90
- Fuel tank 91

5 VISIBILITY 93 → 102

- Lighting controls 93
- Automatic illumination of headlamps 95
- Headlamp adjustment 96
- Directional lighting 97
- Wiper controls 98
- Automatic rain sensitive wipers 100
- Courtesy lamps 101
- Interior mood lighting 102
- Boot lamp 102

6 FITTINGS 103 → 117

- Interior fittings 103
- Front armrest 106
- Mats 107
- Boot fittings 109

7 CHILD SAFETY 118 → 127

- Child seats 118
- ISOFIX child seats 123
- Child lock 127

8 SAFETY 128 → 140

- Direction indicators 128
- Hazard warning lamps 128
- Horn 128
- Tyre under-inflation detection 129
- Emergency or assistance call 130
- Braking assistance systems 130
- Trajectory control systems 131
- Front seat belts 132
- Airbags 137

9 DRIVING 141 → 155

- Parking brake 141
- Manual gearbox 141
- Gear efficiency indicator 142
- 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox 143
- Automatic gearbox 147
- Speed limiter 150
- Cruise control 152
- Parking sensors 154

10 CHECKS 156 → 163

- Bonnet 157
- Running out of fuel (Diesel) 158
- Petrol engines 159
- Diesel engines 160
- Checking levels 161
- Checks 162

11 PRACTICAL INFORMATION 164 → 200

- Temporary puncture repair kit 164
- Changing a wheel 172
- Changing a bulb 179
- Changing a fuse 186
- Battery 192
- Energy economy mode 194
- Changing a wiper blade 194
- Towing the vehicle 195
- Towing a trailer 197
- Fitting roof bars 198
- Very cold climate screen 199
- Accessories 199

12 TECHNICAL DATA 201 → 228

- Petrol and Bioflex engines 201
- Petrol and Bioflex weights 205
- Diesel engines 214
- Diesel weights 217
- Dimensions 226
- Identification markings 227

AUDIO EQUIPMENT and TELEMATICS 229 → 317

- Emergency or assistance 229
- Peugeot Connect Com 3D 233
- Peugeot Connect Navigation 273
- Peugeot Connect Sound 301

VISUAL SEARCH 318 → 324

ALPHABETICAL INDEX 325 → 329

EXTERIOR

Welcome lighting

This additional exterior and interior lighting, controlled remotely, makes your approach to the vehicle easier when the light is poor.

⏭ 96, 102



Panoramic sunroof

This roof provides incomparable visibility and light in the passenger compartment.

⏭ 90



Directional lighting

This lighting automatically provides additional visibility when cornering.

⏭ 97

Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit is a complete system, consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, for the temporary repair of a tyre.

⏭ 164

EXTERIOR



Panoramic sunroof

This roof provides incomparable visibility and light in the passenger compartment.

⏭ 90

Roof bars

Transverse bars fitted on longitudinal bars, these allow you to load long and bulky objects on the roof.

⏭ 198



Opening rear screen

This allows you to access the luggage compartment easily without having to open the tailgate.

⏭ 89

Seat modularity

The individual rear seats of the 2nd and 3rd rows can be arranged in various ways to permit different layout and loading configurations.

⏭ 73

OPENING

Remote control key



A. Unfolding/Folding the key (first press this button).

Normal locking (press once; fixed lighting of the direction indicators).

or

Deadlocking of the vehicle (press twice in succession; fixed lighting of the direction indicators).

⏭ 78

Unlocking of the vehicle (rapid flashing of the direction indicators).

When a sensor detects a low level of light, the remote switching on of the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps makes your approach to the vehicle easier.

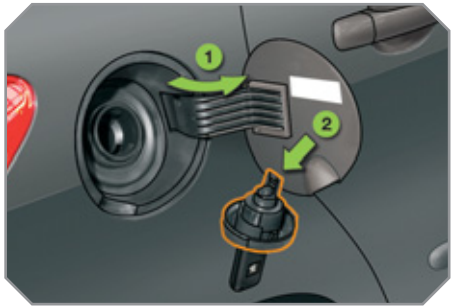
⏭ 96



In the same way, the passenger compartment lighting, such as the courtesy lamps, the front door sill lamps and the footwell lamps, comes on.

⏭ 102

Fuel tank



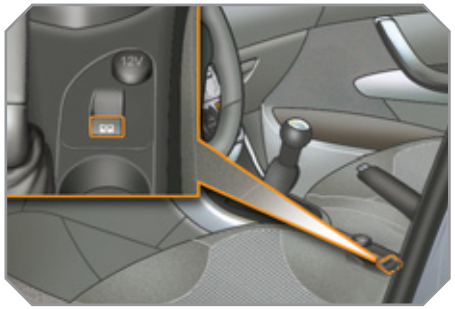
1. Opening the fuel filler flap.
2. Opening and hooking the fuel filler cap.

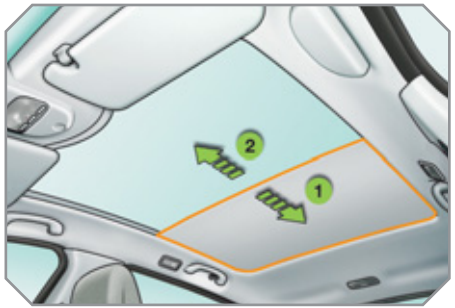
Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

⏭ 91

OPENING

Panoramic sunroof

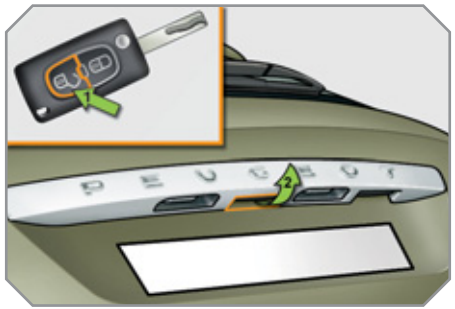




1. Opening the blind.
2. Closing the blind.

⏭ 90

Boot

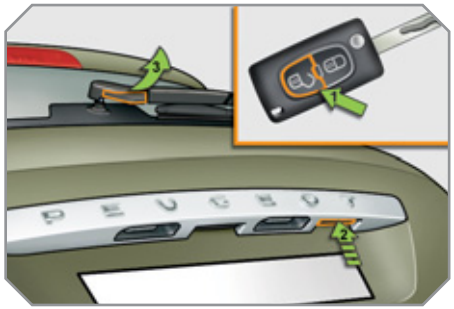


1. Unlocking the vehicle.
2. Opening the boot.

⏭ 89

The tailgate and the rear screen cannot both be open at the same time, to prevent damage to the rear screen.

Rear screen



1. Unlocking the vehicule.
2. Partial opening of the rear screen.
3. Opening the rear screen.

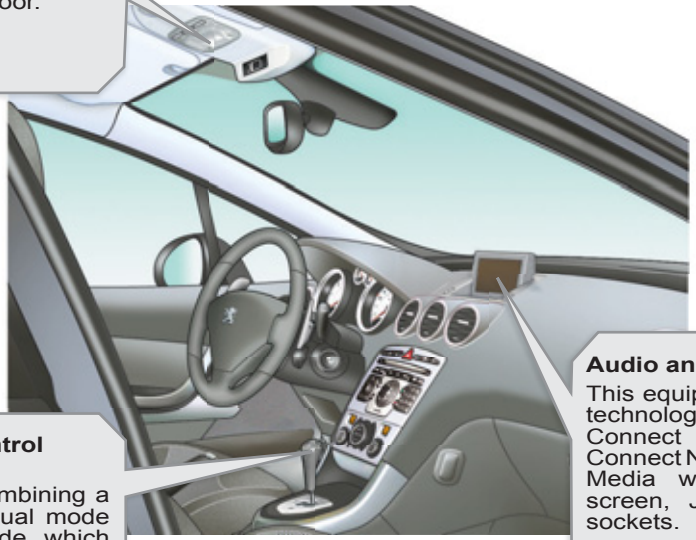
⏭ 89

INTERIOR

Interior mood lighting

This dimmed lighting of the passenger compartment facilitates visibility inside the vehicle when the light is poor.

⏭ 102



6-speed electronic gear control gearbox

This system offers driving combining a fully automatic mode, a manual mode and an auto-sequential mode which combines the advantages of the other two modes.

⏭ 143

Audio and communication systems

This equipment benefits from the latest technology: MP3 compatible Peugeot Connect Sound, Bluetooth, Peugeot Connect Navigation or Peugeot Connect Media with 16/9 retractable colour screen, JBL audio system, auxiliary sockets.

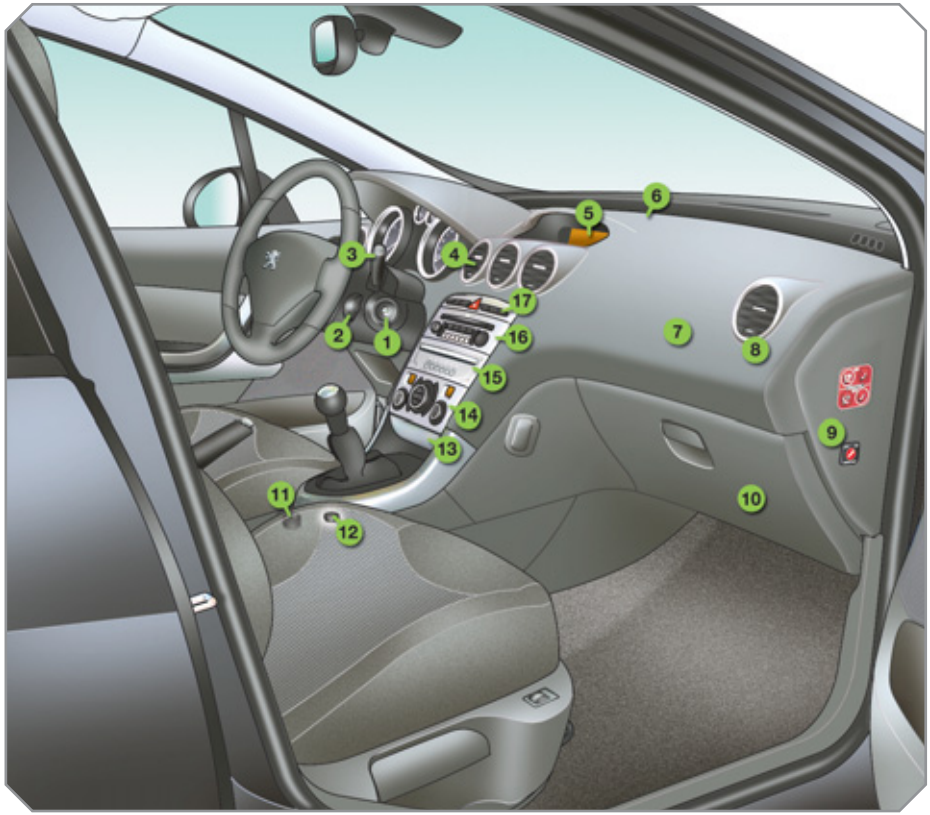
Peugeot Connect Sound ⏭ 301
Peugeot Connect Navigation ⏭ 273
Peugeot Connect Media ⏭ 233

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



1. Cruise control/speed limiter switches.
2. Steering wheel adjustment control.
3. Lighting and direction indicator control stalk.
4. Instrument panel.
5. Driver's airbag.
   Horn.
6. Gear lever.
7. Parking brake.
8. Panoramic sunroof blind control.
9. Heated seat control.
10. Bonnet release.
11. Door mirror controls.
    Electric window controls.
12. Fusebox.
13. Manual headlamp height adjustment.
14. Front side window demisting vent.
15. Speaker (tweeter).
16. Windscreen demisting vent.

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



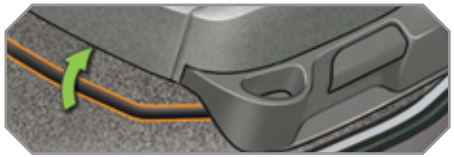
1. Steering lock and ignition.
2. Audio and telematics system steering mounted control.
3. Wiper/wash-wipe/trip computer control stalk.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Multifunction screen.
6. Sunshine sensor.
7. Passenger's airbag.
8. Side adjustable air vent.
9. Passenger's airbag deactivation.
10. Glove box/Audio/video sockets.
11. Storage compartment or instrument panel navigator associated with Peugeot Connect Media.
12. 12 V accessories socket.
13. Front ashtray.
14. Heating/air conditioning controls.
15. CD changer.
16. Audio and telematics system.
17. Emergency call button.
    Alarm button.
    Central locking button.
    Hazard warning lamps button.
    Dynamic stability control (ESP/ ASR) button.
    Parking sensors button.
    PEUGEOT services button

SITTING COMFORTABLY

Driver's seat

Forwards-backwards







Height



Manual adjustment ⏭ 63



Electric adjustment ⏭ 64



Seat back angle



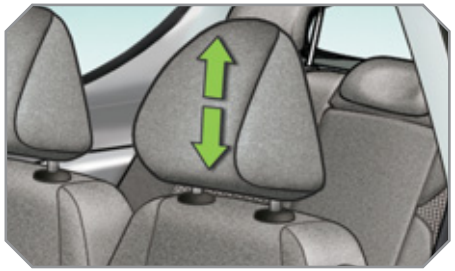




SITTING COMFORTABLY

Front seats

Head restraint height



Lumbar



⏭ 65

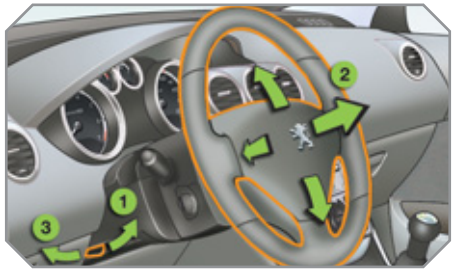
Other functions available...

Table position for the front passenger seat (SW).

Storing driving positions (driver's electric seat).

Heated seats.

Steering wheel adjustment

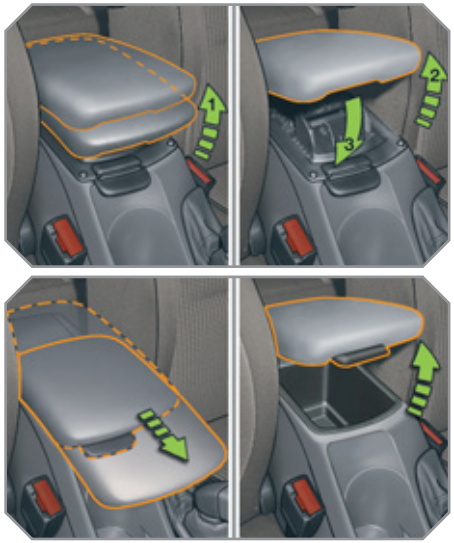


1. Unlocking the control.
2. Adjustment for height and reach.
3. Locking the control.

As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out when stationary.

⏭ 77

Front armrest



For your comfort, the height and longitudinal position of the front armrest can be adjusted.

It also has a storage compartment.

⏭ 106

SITTING COMFORTABLY

Door mirrors



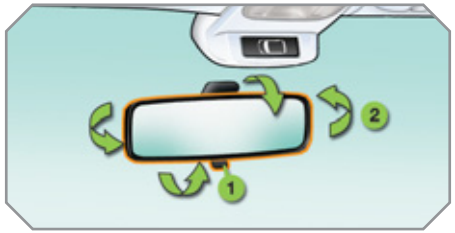
Adjustment

A. Selection of the mirror to be adjusted.
B. Adjustment of the position of the mirror in the four directions.
C. De-selection of the mirror.

⏭ 75

Other functions available...
Folding/Unfolding.
Automatic tilting of the mirror in reverse gear for parking.

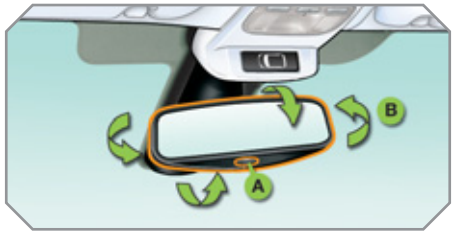
Rear view mirror



Manual day/night model

1. Selection of the "day" position of the mirror.
2. Adjusting the mirror.

⏭ 76



Automatic day/night model

A. Automatic brightness detection for the day/night mode.
B. Adjusting the mirror.

⏭ 77

Front seat belts



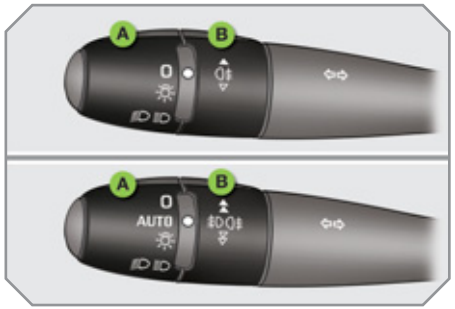


1. Fastening the buckle.
2. Height adjustment.

⏭ 132

SEEING CLEARLY

Lighting



Ring A

0 Lighting off.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Sidelamps.

Dipped/main beam headlamps.

Ring B

Rear foglamp.

or

Front and rear foglamps.

⏭ 93

Direction indicators



Raise or lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash for as long as the stalk remains in this position.

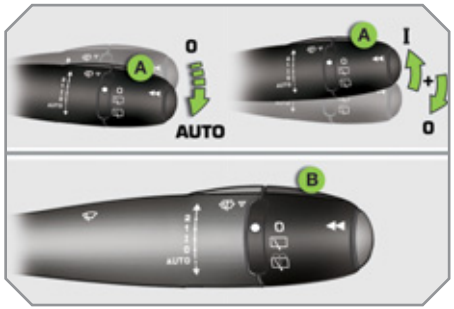
"Motorway" function

Press the lighting stalk up or down once, without passing the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash three times.

This function can be used at any speed, but it is particularly useful when changing lane on high-speed roads.

⏭ 128

Wipers



Stalk A: windscreen wipers

⏭ 98

Switching on "AUTO"

☞ Press the stalk down and release it.

Switching off "AUTO"

☞ Push the stalk up and return it to position **"0"**.

⏭ 100

Ring B: rear wiper

0 Park.

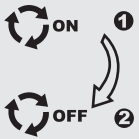
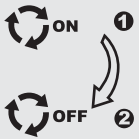
Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe.

⏭ 99

VENTILATION

Recommended interior settings

I require...	Heating or Manual Air Conditioning				
	Air distribution	Air flow	Air recirculation/ Intake of outside air	Temperature	Manual A/C
HOT					—
COLD					ON
DEMISTING DEFROSTING					ON

Digital air conditioning: we recommend use of the fully automatic mode by pressing the **"AUTO"** button.

MONITORING

Instrument panel



A. With the ignition on, the needle should indicate the level of fuel remaining.

B. With the engine running, its associated low level warning lamp should switch off.

C. With the ignition on, the oil level indicator should indicate for a few seconds that the level is correct or OK, depending on version.

If the levels are not correct, top up the levels which are low.

⏭ 22

Warning lamps



1. With the ignition on, the orange and red warning lamps come on.

2. With the engine running, these warning lamps should switch off.

If warning lamps remain on, refer to the page concerned.

⏭ 26

Switch panel



Lighting of the indicator lamp indicates the status of the corresponding function.

A. Emergency call in progress.

⏭ 229

B. Deactivation of the alarm interior volumetric monitoring.

⏭ 83

C. Central locking.

⏭ 87

D. Deactivation of the ESP/ASR system.

⏭ 131

E. Deactivation of the front and rear parking sensors.

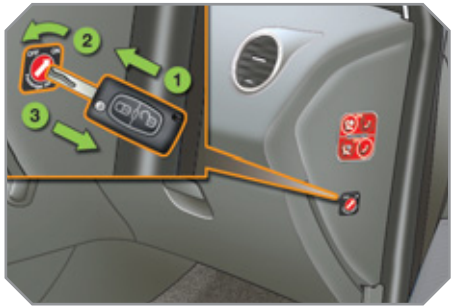
⏭ 155

F. Access to PEUGEOT services.

⏭ 229

PASSENGER SAFETY

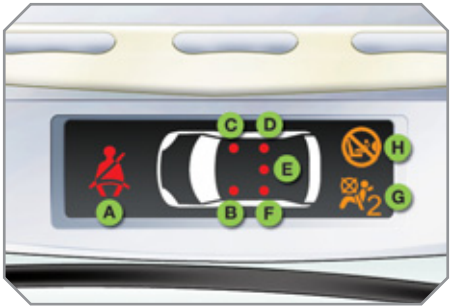
Passenger's front airbag



1. Insert the key.
2. Select the position:
   "OFF" (deactivation), with "rear facing" child seat,
   "ON" (activation), with front passenger or "forwards facing" child seat.
3. Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.

⏭ 137

Seat belts and passenger's front airbag



A. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.
B. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
C. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
D. Rear right seat belt warning lamp*.
E. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp*.
F. Rear left seat belt warning lamp*.
G. Passenger's front airbag deactivated warning lamp.
H. Passenger's front airbag activated warning lamp.

* Only on SW individual rear seats.

⏭ 133, 138

Electric child lock



Lighting of the indicator lamp indicates the status of the corresponding function.

A. Activation of the electric child lock.

⏭ 127

PASSENGER COMFORT

Operating the front passenger seat



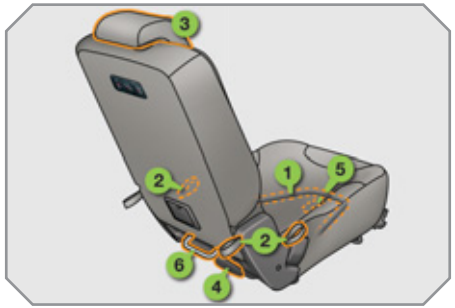
Table position

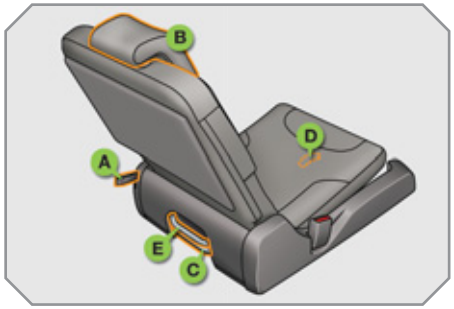
A. Placing in the partial table position.

B. Placing in the full table position.

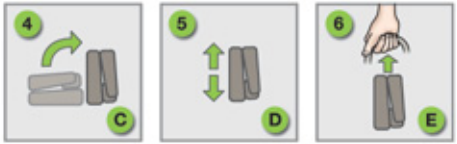
⏭ 65

Operating the rear seats









2nd row rear seats

1. Forwards-backwards adjustment.

2. Seat back angle adjustment/Table position.

3. Head restraint height adjustment.

4. Folding.

5. Removal/Installation.

6. Carrying.

⏭ 69

3rd row additional seats

A. Seat back angle adjustment/Table position.

B. Head restraint height adjustment.

C. Folding.

D. Removal/Installation.

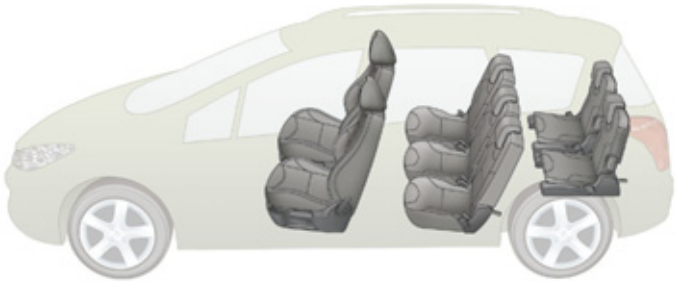
E. Carrying.

⏭ 71

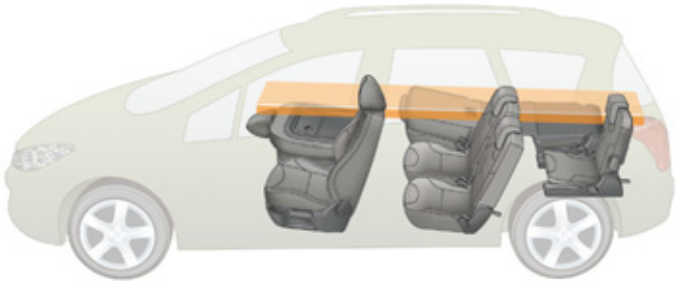
SEAT CONFIGURATION

A few examples of seat modularity

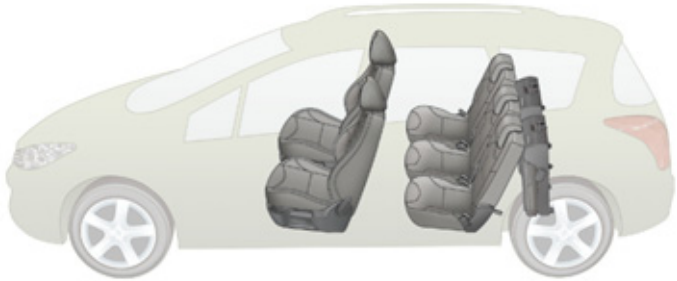
7 seats



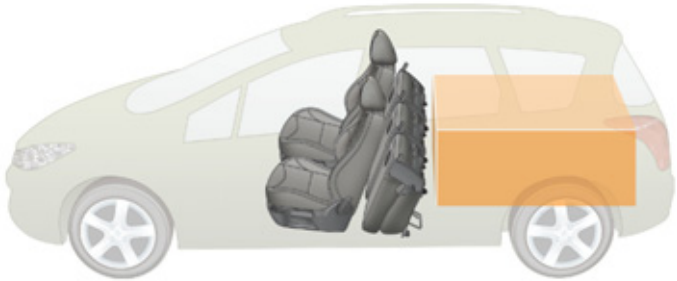
Transporting long objects



7 seats in 5 seats with additional seats folded configuration



Loading a large volume



⏭ 73

DRIVING SAFELY

Speed limiter "LIMIT"



1. Limiter mode Selection/Off.
2. Decreasing of the programmed value.
3. Increasing of the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On/Off.

The values must be set with the engine running.

⏭ 150

Cruise control "CRUISE"



1. Cruise control mode Selection/Off.
2. Programming a speed/Decreasing of the programmed value.
3. Programming a speed/Increasing of the programmed value.
4. Cruise control Off/Resume.

In order to be programmed or activated, the vehicle speed must be higher than 25 mph (40 km/h), with at least fourth gear engaged on the manual gearbox (second gear for the 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox or automatic gearbox).

⏭ 152

Display on the instrument panel



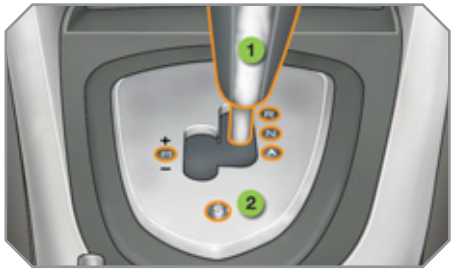
The cruise control or speed limiter mode appears on the instrument panel when it is selected.

Cruise control

Speed limiter

DRIVING SAFELY

6-speed electronic gear control gearbox





This 6-speed gearbox offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

1. Gear lever.
2. Button **"S" (sport)**.
3. Steering wheel **"-"** paddle.
4. Steering wheel **"+"** paddle.

Display on the instrument panel



The gear or the driving mode selected appears on the instrument panel screen.

N: neutral.

R: reverse gear.

1 2 3 4 5 6: gears engaged.

AUTO: automatic mode.

S: Sport driving style.

Moving off



- Select position **N** and press the brake pedal firmly while starting the engine.
- Engage first gear (position **A** or **M**) or reverse (position **R**) using the gear lever **1**.
- Release the parking brake.
- Take your foot off the brake pedal then accelerate.

⏭ 143

PETROL - DIESEL MANUAL OR 6-SPEED ELECTRONIC GEAR CONTROL OR AUTOMATIC GEARBOX INSTRUMENT PANELS



Panel grouping together the vehicle operation indication dials and warning lamps.

Dials

1. **Rev counter.**
   Indicates the speed of rotation of the engine (x 1 000 rpm).
2. **Coolant temperature.**
   Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (° Celsius).
3. **Fuel level.**
   Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Vehicle speed.**
   Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).
5. **Screen.**
6. **Control button.**
   Recalls the service information.
   Resets the function to zero (trip distance recorder or service indicator).
7. **Instrument panel lighting button.**
   Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls.

For more information, refer to the paragraph relating to the button or function and its associated display.

Displays



A. **Speed limiter**
   (mph or km/h) or
   Cruise control.
B. **Gear change indicator.**
C. **6-speed electronic gear control or automatic gearbox.**
D. **Trip distance recorder.**
   (miles or km)
E. **Service indicator**
   (miles or km) then,
   engine oil level indicator
   then
   distance recorder.
   (miles or km)
   These three functions are displayed in succession when the ignition is switched on.

PETROL - DIESEL MANUAL OR 6-SPEED ELECTRONIC GEAR CONTROL OR AUTOMATIC GEARBOX INSTRUMENT PANELS



Panel grouping together the vehicle operation indication dials and warning lamps.

Dials

1. **Rev counter.**
   Indicates the speed of rotation of the engine (x 1 000 rpm).
2. **Coolant temperature.**
   Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (° Celsius).
3. **Fuel level.**
   Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Vehicle speed.**
   Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).
5. **Small screen.**
6. **Central screen.**
7. **Control button.**
   Starts a manual CHECK and recalls the service information.
   Resets the function to zero (trip distance recorder or service indicator).
8. **Instrument panel lighting button.**
   Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls.

For more information, refer to the paragraph which relates to the button or function and its associated display.

Displays



A. **Trip distance recorder.**
   (miles or km)
B. **Distance recorder.**
   (miles or km)
C. **Engine oil level indicator, service indicator.**
   (miles or km)
   These two functions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, then disappear after a few seconds.

The following functions are displayed depending on the selection.

- **Warning lamps/CHECK.**
- **Tyre under-inflation detection.**
- **Speed limiter/Cruise control.**
- **Gear change indicator.**
- **6-speed electronic gear control or automatic gearbox.**
- **Navigation - Guidance/Trip computer.**

PETROL - DIESEL MANUAL OR 6-SPEED ELECTRONIC GEAR CONTROL OR AUTOMATIC GEARBOX PEUGEOT CONNECT MEDIA INSTRUMENT PANELS



Panel grouping together the vehicle operation indication dials and warning lamps.

Dials

1. **Rev counter.**
   Indicates the speed of rotation of the engine (x 1 000 rpm).
2. **Coolant temperature.**
   Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (° Celsius).
3. **Fuel level.**
   Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Vehicle speed.**
   Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (km/h or mph).
5. **Small screen.**
6. **Central screen.**
7. **Control button.**
   Starts a manual CHECK and recalls the service information.
   Resets the function to zero (trip distance recorder or service indicator).
8. **Instrument panel lighting button.**
   Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls.

For more information, refer to the paragraph which relates to the button or function and its associated display.

Displays



A. **Trip distance recorder.**
   (miles or km)
B. **Distance recorder.**
   (miles or km).
C. **Engine oil level indicator, service indicator.**
   (miles or km)
   These two functions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, then disappear after a few seconds.

The following functions are displayed depending on the selection.

- **Warning lamps/CHECK.**
- **Tyre under-inflation detection.**
- **Speed limiter/Cruise control.**
- **Gear shift indicator.**
- **6-speed electronic gear control or automatic gearbox.**
- **Navigation - Guidance/Trip computer.**
- **Vehicle parameters.**

Instrument panel navigator associated with the Peugeot Connect Media



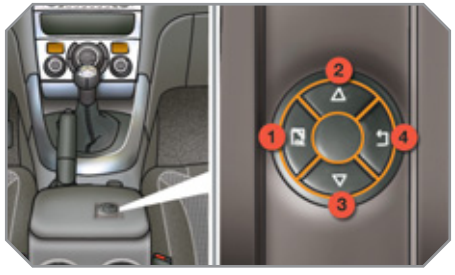
This group of buttons permits:

- **when stationary**, configuration of the vehicle's equipment and of the parameters of the central screen (languages, units...),
- **while driving**, scrolling of the active functions (trip computer, navigation...).

Controls

There are four buttons to control the large central instrument panel screen:

1. access the main menu, confirm the selection,
2. move up through the menu,
3. move down through the menu,
4. return to the previous screen, exit from the menu.



The main menu and its associated functions can only be accessed when stationary, via buttons **1** to **4**.

A message appears on the central screen above a certain speed threshold, indicating that the main menu cannot be displayed.

The trip computer displays can only be accessed while driving, via buttons **2** and **3** (refer to the "Trip computer" section).

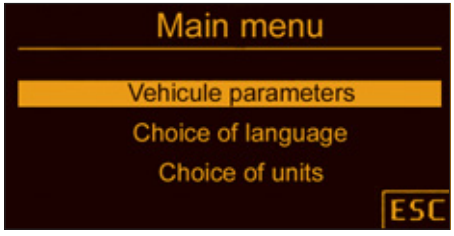
Main menu

☞ Press button **1** for access to the main menu and select one of the following functions:

- "Vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Choice of units".

☞ Press button **2** or **3** to move on the screen.

☞ Press button **1** again to confirm the selection.



Vehicle parameters

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- rear parking sensors (refer to the "Driving" section).

Choice of language

This menu allows you to select the language used by the display: Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Türkçe*.

Choice of units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) and consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

* According to country.

Indicator and warning lamps

Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation (operation or deactivation indicator lamps) or of the occurrence of a fault (warning lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

The warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lamps should switch off.

If they remain on, before moving off, consult the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

The switching on of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

The warning lamps may come on continuously or flash.

Certain warning lamps may come on in two different modes. Only by relating the type of lighting to the operating status of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred.







Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.

Common operation indicator lamps

Left-hand direction indicator.

Dipped beam headlamps.

Main beam headlamps.

Parking brake applied.

Right-hand direction indicator.

Front foglamps.

Rear foglamp.

Diesel engine pre-heating.
Wait until this has gone out before operating the starter.

Specific operation indicator lamps

The other indicator lamps appear on the large screen, located in the centre of the instrument panel.





Automatic locking.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have activated automatic locking of the doors and boot while driving.

Automatic rain sensitive wipers.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have activated automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers.

Automatic illumination of headlamps.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have activated automatic illumination of headlamps.

Speed limiter.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have activated the speed limiter mode.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you can set the speed limiter speed value to be stored.

Cruise control.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have activated the cruise control mode.

If this is displayed it indicates that you can set the cruise control speed value to be stored.

6-speed electronic gear control gearbox.

This display indicates the position that you have selected on the gear selection gate (R, N, A or M).

This display indicates the gear engaged in automatic or manual operating mode (1 to 6).

This display indicates the operating mode selected (automatic or sport).

Automatic gearbox.

This display indicates the position that you have selected on the gear selection gate (P, R, N or D).

This display indicates the gear engaged in the automatic or manual operation programme.

This display indicates the operating programme selected (automatic, sport, snow or manual).

Deactivation warning lamps

If one of the following warning lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.



Common deactivation warning lamps

Passenger's airbag system deactivation.

The passenger's airbag system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific control switch, located on the passenger's side of the dashboard, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning lamp on the instrument panel or on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display.

Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR) deactivation

The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific button, located on the dashboard, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning lamp and of the indicator lamp on the button.

From approximately 30 mph (50 km/h), the system is reactivated automatically.

Specific deactivation warning lamps





The other warning lamps appear on the large screen, located in the centre of the instrument panel.

Automatic locking.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have deactivated the automatic locking of the doors and boot while driving.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have deactivated automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers.

Automatic illumination of headlamps.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have deactivated automatic illumination of headlamps.

Speed limiter.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have deactivated the speed limiter.

Cruise control.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have deactivated the cruise control.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is moving, the lighting of one of the following warning lamps indicates the occurrence of a fault requiring intervention on the part of the driver.







Any fault resulting in the displaying of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message on the multifunction screen.

In the event of difficulty, do not hesitate to contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

Common warning lamps

STOP **Central alert.**

Lighting is associated with the displaying of another warning lamp:

- punctured wheel,
- braking,
- power steering,
- engine oil pressure,
- coolant temperature,

stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Service.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a problem in one of the systems which does not have a specific warning lamp.

To identify the problem, consult the message on the multifunction screen.

After checking:

- that the doors, boot, the rear screen and bonnet are closed,
- the engine oil level,
- the screenwash fluid level,
- the remote control battery,
- the pressure of the tyres,
- the end of saturation of the particle emission filter (Diesel),

for any other situations, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

Braking.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the braking systems:

- significant drop in the brake fluid level,
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) faulty (simultaneous lighting of the ABS warning lamp),

stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

When the vehicle is moving, check that the parking brake is fully released.

ABS **Anti-lock braking system (ABS).**

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the anti-lock braking system.

However, this does not prevent operation of the vehicle's servo-assisted braking.

Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR).

The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

Unless the system has been deactivated, if this warning lamp and the indicator lamp on the button come on continuously, this indicates the occurrence of a fault in the ESP/ASR system or in the hill start assist system.

Foot on brake.

On the 6-speed electronic gear system gearbox, with the gear lever in position **N**, press the brake pedal to start the engine.

On the automatic gearbox, with the engine running, press the brake pedal to release the gear lever and disengage position **P**.

Engine autodiagnostics system.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the engine management system.

If it flashes, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the emission control system.

Maximum coolant temperature.

If this comes on, it indicates that the temperature in the cooling system is too high. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Low fuel level.

When this first comes on, you have approximately **6 litres** of fuel remaining in the tank.

Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp comes on again each time the ignition is switched on, along with an audible signal and a message. According to version, this audible signal and this message are repeated, at increasingly shorter intervals as the level decreases towards **"0"**.

Capacity of the tank: approximately **60 litres**.

Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, this could damage the emission control and injection systems.

Specific warning lamps



Engine oil pressure.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the engine lubrication system. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Battery charge.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the battery charging circuit (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt...).

Door open.

A door, the boot or the rear screen is open:

- if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp comes on continuously.
- if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp comes on continuously, accompanied by an audible signal.

Airbags.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems.

Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened.

If this comes on, it indicates that the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt. According to version and/or country, the unfastening of the seat belt only may be detected for the front passenger.

It also indicates that one or more rear passengers have unfastened their seat belt (only on the 2nd row individual rear seats on the SW).

Water in diesel*.

If this comes on, it indicates the presence of water in the diesel filter.

There is a risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines.

* According to country.

Specific warning lamps





Directional headlamps.

If this flashes, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the directional headlamps system.

The other warning lamps appear on the large screen, located in the centre of the instrument panel.

Depending on the seriousness of the fault, they may be displayed in orange or red.

The display of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Certain warning lamps may be linked with those of the instrument panel.

If they are linked with the **STOP** warning lamp, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Service.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the following:

- the engine management system,
- the emissions control system.

Engine autodiagnostics system.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the engine management system.

Battery charge.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the battery charging circuit (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt...).

Engine oil pressure.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the engine lubrication circuit. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Engine oil level.

If this is displayed, it indicates that the engine oil level is too low. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Coolant temperature.

If this is displayed, it indicates that the temperature in the cooling system is too high. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Coolant level.

If this is displayed, it indicates that the coolant level is too low. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Screenwash fluid level.

If this is displayed, following an action on the wiper stalk, it indicates that the screenwash fluid level is low.

Fill the screenwash/headlamp wash fluid reservoir when you next stop.

Fuel level.

When this first comes on, you have approximately **6 litres** of fuel remaining in the tank

Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp comes on again each time the ignition is switched on, along with an audible signal and a message. According to version, this audible signal and this message are repeated, at increasingly shorter intervals as the level decreases towards **"0"**.

Capacity of the tank: approximately **60 litres**.

Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Electronic immobiliser.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the electronic engine immobiliser system or that the remote control battery is flat.

Door open.

A door, the boot or the rear screen is open:

- if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp is displayed in orange,
- if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp is displayed in red.

Airbags.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the airbag or pretensioning seat belt systems.

Braking.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the braking systems:

- significant drop in the brake fluid level,
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) faulty (simultaneous lighting of the ABS warning lamp).

Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

If the vehicle is moving, check that the parking brake is fully released.

Parking brake.

If this is displayed, while the vehicle is moving, it indicates that the parking brake has not been fully released.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS).

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the anti-lock braking system.

However, this does not prevent operation of the vehicle's servo-assisted braking.



Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR).

The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

Unless the system has been deactivated, if this warning lamp and the indicator lamp on the button come on, this indicates the occurrence of a fault in the ESP/ASR system or in the hill start assist.



Ice warning.

If this is displayed, it indicates that there is risk of the formation of ice on the road below a temperature of 3 °C.

Drive carefully.



Power steering.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the power steering. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



6-speed electronic gear control gearbox or automatic gearbox.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox or automatic gearbox. The gearbox will then operate in down-grade mode, locked on 3rd gear.

It may also be displayed if a door is opened.



Position P or N.

If this is displayed, it indicates that the gear lever must be placed in position **P** or **N** in order to start the engine.



Invalid value.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the programme of the 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox or automatic gearbox.



Visual and/or audible parking sensors.

If this comes on, in forward and/or reverse gear, it indicates a fault in the parking sensor system.



Under-inflated tyre.

If this is displayed, it indicates low pressure in one or more wheels.

Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible.



Punctured tyre.

If this is displayed, it indicates that one or more wheels are punctured. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Change the damaged wheel and have it repaired by a PEUGEOT dealer.



Tyre under-inflation detection.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault on one of the sensors or in the tyre under-inflation detection system.

It may also indicate the absence of a sensor when the spare wheel, which does not have a sensor, is fitted in place of a punctured wheel.



Automatic lighting.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the automatic lighting.

Use the other positions of the lighting stalk to control the lighting manually.



Automatic headlamp adjustment.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the automatic headlamp adjustment.

Water in diesel*.

If this is displayed, it indicates the presence of water in the diesel filter.

There is a risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines.

Particle emission filter (Diesel).

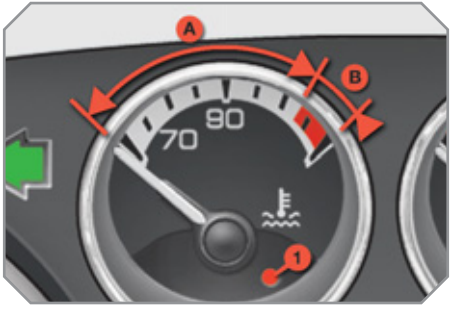
If this is displayed, linked with the service warning lamp, it indicates the start of saturation of the particle emission filter or a low diesel additive reservoir level.

As soon as traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the service warning lamp is switched off.

If the service warning lamp is still displayed, the additive level is low. Have it topped up by a PEUGEOT dealer without delay.

* According to country.

Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the max temperature warning lamp **1** and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.

To top up the level:

- ☞ wait for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

Engine oil level indicator

System which informs the driver whether the engine oil level is correct or not.



This information is indicated for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 15 minutes.

Oil level correct



Lack of oil



This is indicated by the flashing of **"OIL"**, linked with the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

If the lack of oil is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, it is essential that the level is topped up to prevent damage to the engine.

Oil level indicator fault



This is indicated by the flashing of **"OIL--"**. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

Dipstick

Refer to the "Checks" section to locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap on your engine.



There are 2 marks on the dipstick:

- **A** = max; never exceed this level (risk of damage to the engine),
- **B** = min; top up the level via the oil filler cap, using the grade of oil suited to your engine.

Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset. It is determined by two parameters:

- the distance travelled,
- the time elapsed since the last service.



More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears on the display.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

Example: 1 700 miles/2 800 km remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner is switched off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The display then indicates the total and trip distances.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 400 miles/900 km remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

Example: the service is overdue by 300 miles (km).

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the display indicates:





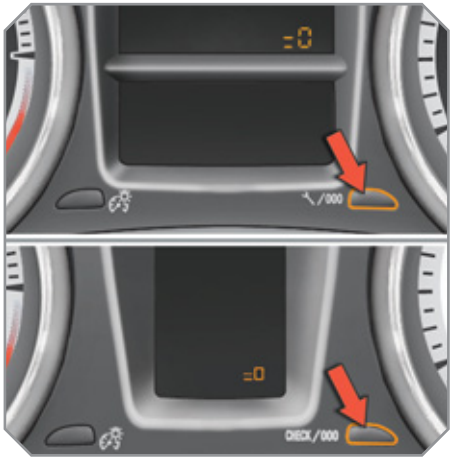
5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains lit**.



The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driver's driving habits.

Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the two year service interval.

Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- switch off the ignition,
- press and hold the **".../000"** button on the right of the instrument panel,
- switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- when the instrument panel central screen indicates **"=0"**, release the button; the spanner disappears from the screen.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

This information appears, depending on version, when running through the manual check procedure.

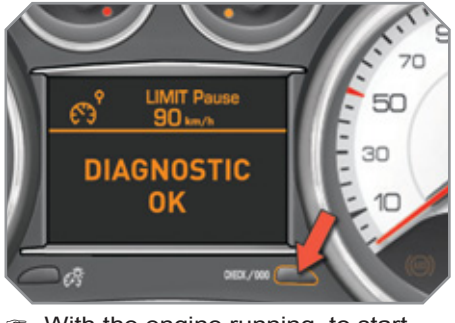
- Briefly press the **".../000"** button on the right of the instrument panel.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel central screen, then disappears.

Manual Check

This function allows you to check the status of the vehicle (reminder of the warnings and of the "activated" or "deactivated" status of the configurable functions) and the service information.





☞ With the engine running, to start a manual check, briefly press the **"CHECK/000"** button on the instrument panel.

If no faults have been detected, **"CHECK OK"** appears on the instrument panel central screen.

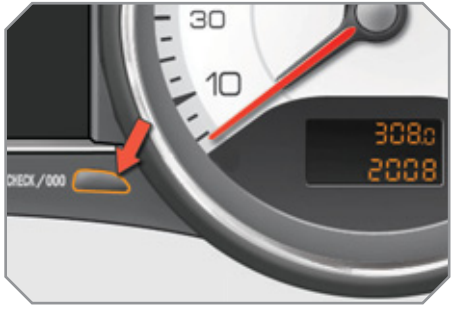
If a "minor" fault has been detected, the warning lamp concerned then **"CHECK OK"** appear on the instrument panel central screen. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

If a "major" fault has been detected, only the warning lamps concerned appear on the instrument panel central screen. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.



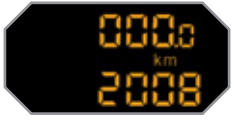


Total distance recorder

Measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder

Measures a distance travelled since it was reset to zero by the driver.



☞ With the ignition on, press and hold this button until zeros appear.

Lighting rheostat

Permits manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls in relation to the exterior brightness. Only operates when the vehicle lighting is on, with the exception of the daytime running lamps.



Activation

- Press the button to change the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- When the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release the button, then press again to increase it.

or

- When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release the button, then press again to reduce it.
- When the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release the button.

Deactivation

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the button does not have any effect.

MONOCHROME SCREEN A (WITHOUT PEUGEOT CONNECT SOUND)



Displays on the screen

This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature* (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- status of the openings (doors, boot...),
- trip computer (refer to the end of the section).

Warning messages (e.g.: "Emission control system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Boot open") may appear temporarily. These can be cleared by pressing the **"ESC"** button.

Controls



There are three display control buttons:

- **"ESC"** to abandon the operation in progress,
- **"MENU"** to scroll through the menus or sub-menus,
- **"OK"** to select the menu or sub-menu required.

General menu



☞ Press the **"MENU"** button to scroll through the various menus of the **main menu**:

- vehicle configuration,
- options,
- display settings,
- languages,
- units.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

* With air conditioning only.



Vehicle configuration



Once the "Vehicle configuration" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "guide-me-home" and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- rear parking sensors (refer to the "Driving" section).

Options

Once the "Options" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Display settings

Once the "Display settings" menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.



☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the **"OK"** button to change its value.



☞ Wait for approximately ten seconds without any action to allow the changed data to be recorded or press the **"ESC"** button to cancel.

The screen then returns to the normal display.

Languages

Once the "Languages" menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display (Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Deutsch, English, Espanol).

Units

Once the "Units" menu has been selected, you can change the units of the following parameters:

- temperature (°C or °F),
- fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

MONOCHROME SCREEN A



Displays on the screen

This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature* (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- status of the openings (doors, boot...),
- audio sources (radio, CD...),
- trip computer (refer to the end of the section).

Warning messages (e.g.: "Emission control system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Boot open") may appear temporarily. These can be cleared by pressing the **"ESC"** button.

Controls



From the control panel of your Peugeot Connect Sound, you can:

- press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**,
- press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- press the **"MODE"** button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source...),
- press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- press the **"OK"** button to confirm,

or

- press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**, then press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the various menus:
  - radio-CD,
  - vehicle configuration,
  - options,
  - display settings,
  - languages,
  - units.
- Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

Radio-CD

With the Peugeot Connect Sound switched on, once the "Radio-CD" menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG), the CD or the CD changer (introscan, shuffle, CD repeat).

For more information on the "Radio-CD" application, refer to the Peugeot Connect Sound part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.

* With air conditioning only.



Vehicle configuration



Once the "Vehicle Configuration" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "guide-me-home" and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- rear parking sensors (refer to the "Driving" section).

Options

Once the "Options" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Display settings

Once the "Display settings" menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hour,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.



☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change its value.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to switch respectively to the previous or next setting.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to record the change and return to the normal display or press the **"ESC"** button to cancel.

Languages

Once the "Languages" menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display (Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Deutsch, English, Espanol).

Units

Once the "Units" menu has been selected, you can change the units of the following parameters:

- temperature (°C or °F),
- fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

MONOCHROME SCREEN C



Displays on the screen

This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature* (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- status of the openings (doors, boot...),
- audio sources (radio, CD...),
- trip computer (refer to the end of the section).

Warning messages (e.g.: "Emission control system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Automatic switching on of the headlamps activated") may appear temporarily. These can be cleared by pressing the **"ESC"** button.

Controls



From the control panel of your Peugeot Connect Sound, you can:

- press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**,
- press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- press the **"MODE"** button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source...),
- press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- press the **"OK"** button to confirm,

or

- press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**:
  - audio functions,
  - diagnosis vehicle,
  - personalisation-configuration,
  - telephone (Bleutooth system).
- Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.

"Audio functions" menu

With the Peugeot Connect Sound switched on, once this menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG, RadioText), the CD or the CD changer (introscan, shuffle, CD repeat).

For more information on the "Audio functions" application, refer to the Peugeot Connect Sound part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.

* With air conditioning only.



"Diagnosis vehicle" menu

Once this menu has been selected, you can consult information concerning the status of the vehicle, such as the alert log.

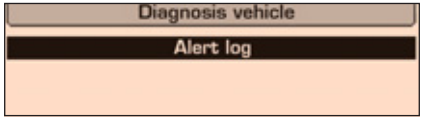
Alert log

This summarises the active warning messages, displaying them in succession on the multifunction screen.

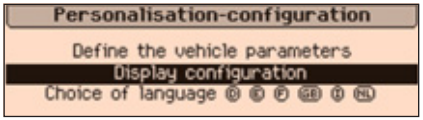
- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the main menu.
- Press the arrows, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"Diagnosis vehicle"** menu.



- On the **"Diagnosis vehicle"** menu, select the following application:



"Personalisation-Configuration" menu



Once this menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following functions:

- define the vehicle parameters,
- display configuration,
- choice of language.

Define the vehicle parameters

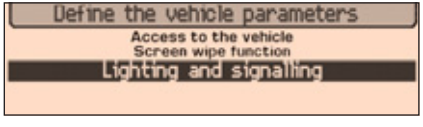
Once this menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "guide-me-home" and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- rear parking sensors (refer to the "Driving" section).

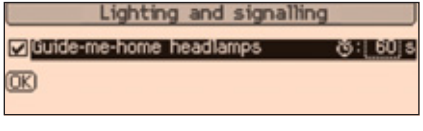


Example: setting of the duration of the "guide-me-home" lighting

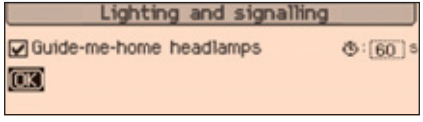
☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the "Guide-me-home headlamps" line.



☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the **"OK"** button to confirm.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm or press the **"ESC"** button to cancel.

Display configuration

Once this menu has been selected, you can gain access to the following settings:

- brightness-video setting,
- date and time setting,
- choice of units.

Choice of language

Once this menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display (Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Türkçe**).

** According to country.



"Telephone" menu

With the Peugeot Connect Sound switched on, once this menu has been selected you can configure your Bluetooth system (pairing), consult the various telephone directories (calls log, services...) and manage your communications (pick up, hang up, call waiting, secret mode...).

For more information on the "Telephone" application, refer to the Peugeot Connect Sound part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.



For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

16/9 RETRACTABLE COLOUR SCREEN (WITH PEUGEOT CONNECT NAVIGATION)



Displays on the screen

Once the screen is unfolded, it displays the following information automatically and directly:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- openings check,
- warning and vehicle function status messages, displayed temporarily,
- audio functions,
- trip computer information,
- satellite navigation system information.

Controls



From the Peugeot Connect Navigation control panel, to select one of the applications:

☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MUSIC"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"SETUP"** or **"PHONE"** button for access to the corresponding menu,

☞ turn the navigator to move the selection,

☞ press the navigator to confirm the selection,

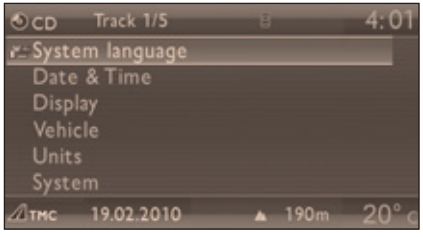
or

☞ press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

For more information on these applications, refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section or to the specific user guide given to you with the other owner's documents.

For operation of the retractable screen (opening, closing, adjustment of the position, etc.), refer to the paragraph "Access to the retractable screen".

"SETUP" menu



☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button to gain access to the **"SETUP"** menu. This allows you to select from the following functions:

- "Languages",
- "Date and time",
- "Display",
- "Vehicle parameters",
- "Units",
- "System parameters".

Languages

This menu allows you to select the language used by the display: Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Polski, Portugues, Türkçe*.

Date and time

This menu allows you to set the date and time, the format of the date and the format of the time (refer to the "Audio and Telematics" section or to the specific user guide given to you with the other owner's documents).

Display

This menu allows you to set the brightness of the screen, the screen colour scheme and the colour of the map (day/night or auto mode).

Vehicle parameters

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort equipment:

- wiper linked with reverse gear (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- rear parking sensors (refer to the "Driving" section).

Units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°C or °F) and consumption (km/l, l/100 or mpg).

System parameters

This menu allows you to restore the factory configuration, display the software version and activate scrolling text.

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

* According to country.

16/9 HIGH DEFINITION RETRACTABLE COLOUR SCREEN (WITH PEUGEOT CONNECT MEDIA)



Displays on the screen

Once unfolded, it displays the following information automatically and directly:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- audio functions,
- parking sensors,
- telephone and address book information,
- satellite navigation system information.

Controls



From the Peugeot Connect Media control panel, to select one of the applications:

- press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MEDIA"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"ADDR BOOK"** or **"SETUP"** button for access to the corresponding menu,
- turn the navigator to move the selection,
- press the navigator to confirm the selection,

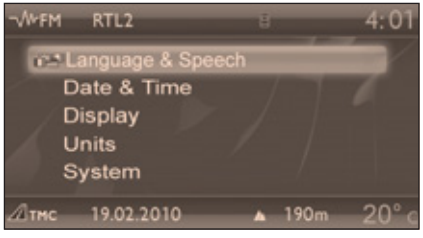
or

- press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

For more information on these applications, refer to the Peugeot Connect Media part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.

For operation of the retractable screen (opening, closing, adjustment of the position, etc.), refer to the paragraph "Access to the retractable screen".

"SETUP" menu



☞ Press the **"SETUP"** button to gain access to the **"SETUP"** menu. This allows you to select from the following functions:

- "Language and speech",
- "Date and time",
- "Display",
- "Units",
- "System".

Language and speech

This menu allows you to:

- select the language used by the display (Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Polski, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Türkçe*),
- select the voice recognition parameters (activation/deactivation, advice on use, personal voice programming, etc.),
- set the volume of the voice synthesiser.

Date and time

This menu allows you to set the date and time, the format of the date and the format of the time (refer to the Peugeot Connect Media part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.

Display

This menu allows you to set the brightness of the screen, the screen colour scheme and the colour of the map (day/night or auto mode).

Units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°C or °F) and distance (miles or km).

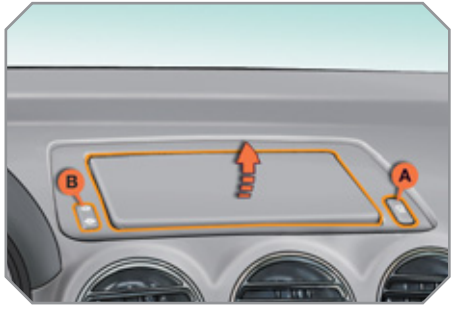
System

This menu allows you to restore the factory configuration, display the software version and activate scrolling text.

For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

* According to country.

Access to the retractable screen



This screen is opened and stored automatically.

However, you can also open it, store it and adjust it using the various manual controls:

- opening or storing by means of control **A**,
- angle adjustments by means of control **B**.

It is also fitted with safety auto-reverse protection.

Opening the screen

☞ With the screen stored, press control **A** to open it.

The screen opens automatically when the ignition is switched on, when the audio and telematics system is switched on, when an outgoing telephone call is made, when a voice command is given and when a warning message linked with the STOP warning lamp is received.

If you close the screen during operation of the audio and telematics system, it will re-open automatically when an outgoing telephone call is made, when a voice command is given or when a warning message linked with the STOP warning lamp is received.

Closing the screen

☞ With the screen open, press control **A** to store it.

The screen is stored automatically when the ignition is switched off, after approximately three seconds, if the audio and telematics system is off.

Safety auto-reverse

If the screen meets an obstacle as it opens or closes, the movement stops immediately and is reversed by a few millimetres.

After clearing the obstacle, issue the command required again.

If you wish the screen to open or close automatically when the audio and telematics system is switched on or off, the screen must not be closed when the audio and telematics system is operating.

Adjusting the position of the screen



When the screen is open, you can adjust it precisely in different ways:

☞ press the corresponding part of control **B** to move the screen towards you or towards the windscreen,

or

☞ push or pull the screen gently by hand.

Storing the position of the screen

The system has four pre-set positions in its memory.

Each time the screen is closed, the system stores the last position of the screen.

Each time the screen is re-opened, the system returns the screen to the pre-set position closest to that stored.

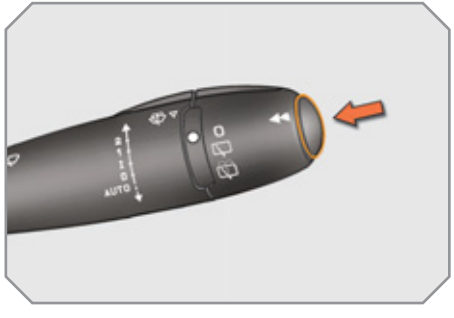
TRIP COMPUTER

System which provides current information concerning the trip travelled (range, fuel consumption...).

Monochrome screen A



Information displays



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various items of trip computer data in succession.

The trip computer provides the following information:

- range,



- current fuel consumption,



- distance travelled,



- average fuel consumption,



- average speed.



☞ The next press then returns you to the normal display.

Zero reset

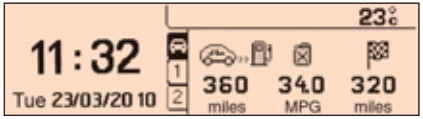


☞ Press the control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

TRIP COMPUTER

System which provides current information concerning the route travelled (range, fuel consumption…).

Monochrome screen C



Instrument panel small central screen



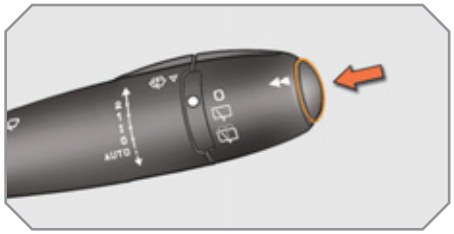
Instrument panel large central screen



Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the trip computer information appears on the multifunction screen or on the central screen in the instrument panel.

Information displays

With the monochrome screen C or the instrument panel small screen



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.

With the instrument panel large central screen



☞ Press the up and down arrows on the instrument panel navigator, associated with the Peugeot Connect Media, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.

- The current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the distance remaining to be travelled.

- The trip **"1"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,

  for the first trip.

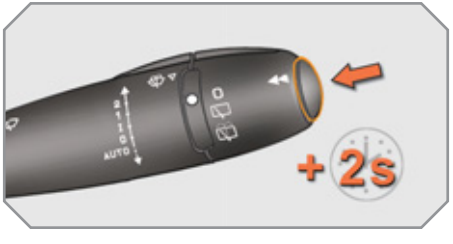
- The trip **"2"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed,

  for the second trip.

☞ Pressing the button again takes you to a black screen.
A further press returns you to the normal display.

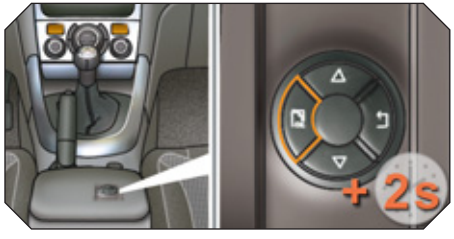
Trip zero reset

With the monochrome screen C or the instrument panel small screen



☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper stalk for more than two seconds.

With the instrument panel large central screen



☞ When the required trip is displayed, press the **"OK"** button on the instrument panel navigator, associated with the Peugeot Connect Media, for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily calculations, and trip **"2"** for monthly calculations.

A few definitions...



Range

(miles or km)

This indicates the distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank in relation to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled.

This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.



Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).



Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption since the last trip computer zero reset.



Average speed

(mph or km/h)

This is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).



Distance travelled

(miles or km)

This indicates the distance travelled since the last trip computer zero reset.



Distance remaining to destination

(miles or km)

This is the distance remaining to be travelled to the final destination. It is either calculated instantly by the navigation system, if guidance is activated, or entered by the user.

If the distance is not entered, dashes are displayed in place of the digits.



VENTILATION

Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Air treatment

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

The temperature control enables you to obtain the level of comfort required by mixing the air of the various circuits.

The air distribution control enables you to diffuse the air in the passenger compartment combining several air vents.

The air flow control enables you to increase or reduce the speed of the ventilation blower.

Control panel

The controls of this system are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console. Depending on the model, the functions offered are:

- level of comfort required,
- air flow,
- air distribution,
- demisting and defrosting,
- manual or digital air conditioning controls.

Air diffusion

1. Windscreen demisting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Adjustable air vents for the rear passengers.
7. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR VENTILATION AND AIR CONDITIONING

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the digital air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly (refer to the "Checks" section).

  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.
- If the system does not produce cold air, deactivate it and contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.

Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

HEATING/VENTILATION



MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING



The heating/ventilation or air conditioning systems can only operate with the engine running.

1. Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

2. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from position **1** to position **5** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

☞ If you place the air flow control in position **0** (deactivation of the system), the temperature is no longer maintained at a comfortable level. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

3. Air distribution adjustment



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.



Central and side vents.



The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

4. Air intake/Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.

The recirculation of interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.

Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the the air quality and the formation of mist.



☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.

☞ Press the button again to permit the intake of exterior air. The indicator lamp switches off to confirm this.

5. Air conditioning On/Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

Switching on

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position **"0"**.

Switching off

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the button's indicator lamp switches off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

FRONT DEMIST - DEFROST



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

With the heating/ventilation system

☞ Put the temperature and air flow controls to the dedicated marked position.

☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position

(control indicator lamp off).

☞ Put the air distribution control to the "Windscreen" position.

With the manual air conditioning system

☞ Put the temperature and air flow controls to the dedicated marked position.

☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position

(indicator lamp on the control off).

☞ Put the air distribution control to the "Windscreen" position.

☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the **"A/C"** button; the associated green warning lamp comes on.

REAR SCREEN DEMIST - DEFROST



The control button is located on the heating or air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button switches off.

If the engine is switched off before the demisting/defrosting is switched off automatically, demisting/defrosting will resume next time the engine is switched on.

☞ Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

DUAL-ZONE DIGITAL AIR CONDITIONING



The air conditioning only operates when the engine is running.

Automatic operation

1. Automatic comfort programme



☞ Press the **"AUTO"** button. The indicator lamp on the button comes on.

We recommend the use of this mode: it permits automatic and optimised adjustment of all of the functions, passenger compartment temperature, air flow, air distribution and air recirculation, in accordance with the comfort value that you have chosen.

This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

When the engine is cold, to prevent too great a distribution of cold air, the air flow will reach its optimum level gradually.

In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, side windows and footwells only.

2. Driver's side adjustment

3. Passenger side adjustment



The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left or to the right respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

You are advised to avoid a left/right setting difference of more than 3.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required. The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

4. Automatic visibility programme



The automatic comfort programme may not be sufficient to quickly demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows (humidity, several passengers, ice, etc.).

☞ In this case, select the automatic visibility programme.

The system automatically controls the air conditioning, the air flow and the air intake and provides optimum distribution of the ventilation to the windscreen and side windows.

☞ To switch it off, press the **"visibility"** button again or press the **"AUTO"** button, the indicator lamp on the button switches off and the indicator lamp on the **"AUTO"** button comes on.

Manual operation

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be controlled automatically.

☞ Pressing the **"AUTO"** button returns the system to completely automatic operation.

For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left until **"LO"** is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** is displayed.

5. Air conditioning On/Off



☞ Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

☞ Press this button again to return to automatic operation of the air conditioning. The indicator lamp on the **"A/C"** button comes on.

6. Air distribution adjustment



☞ Press one or more buttons to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the windscreen, the side windows and the vents,
- the windscreen, the side windows, the vents and the footwells,
- the vents and the footwells,
- the vents,
- the footwells,
- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells.

7. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn this control to the left to decrease the air flow or to the right to increase the air flow.

The air flow indicator lamps, between the two fans, come on progressively in relation to the value requested.

8. Air intake/Air recirculation



☞ Press this button for recirculation of the interior air. The indicator lamp on the button comes on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.

☞ As soon as possible, press this button again to permit the intake of outside air and prevent the formation of condensation. The indicator lamp on the button switches off.

9. Mono-zone/Dual-zone



☞ Press this button to equalise the comfort value on the passenger's side with that on the driver's side (mono zone). The indicator lamp on the button comes on.

Switching the system off

☞ Turn the air flow control to the left until all of the indicator lamps switch off.

This action switches off the air conditioning and the ventilation.

Temperature related comfort is no longer guaranteed but a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

☞ Turn the air flow dial to the right or press the **"AUTO"** button to reactivate the system with the values set before it was switched off.

Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode or driving for long periods with the system off (risk of condensation and deterioration of the air quality).

FRONT SEATS

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

Manual adjustments

Forwards-backwards adjustment

☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

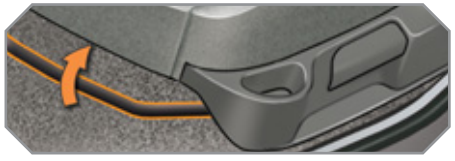
Driver's or passenger's seat height adjustment

☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary, to obtain the position required.

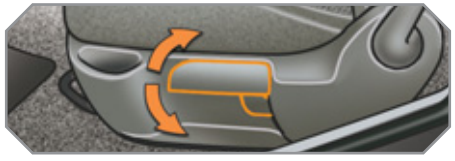
Seat back angle adjustment

☞ Push the control rearwards.













FRONT SEATS

Seat consisting of a seat cushion, a seat back and a head restraint which can all be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

> The electrical functions of the driver's seat are deactivated approximately one minute after the ignition is switched off.
>
> To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

Driver's seat electric adjustments

Forwards-backwards adjustment

☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

Seat cushion height and angle adjustment

☞ Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.

☞ Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Seat back angle adjustment

☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat back.



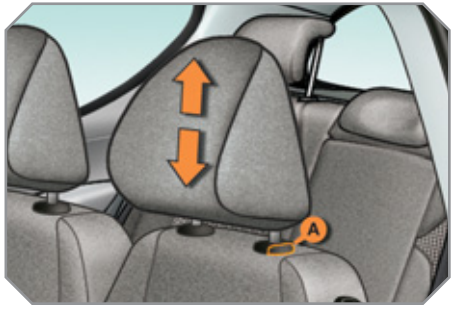




Additional adjustments

Head restraint height adjustment

- To raise the head restraint, pull it forwards and upwards at the same time.
- To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back.
- To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the head restraint at the same time.



The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.

The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.

Lumbar adjustment

- Turn the dial to obtain the correct lumbar position.



Table position for front passenger seat

Placing this seat in the table position, with the rear seats also in the table position, allows you to transport long objects.

- Pull the control upwards to fold the seat back onto the seat cushion.

  To lower the seat back fully, tilt the seat back angle adjustment control.
- Pull the control again to release the seat back and raise it.

  When put back in place, the seat back returns to its initial position.



Do not forget to fold the "aircraft" type table fixed on the back of the seat first.

Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

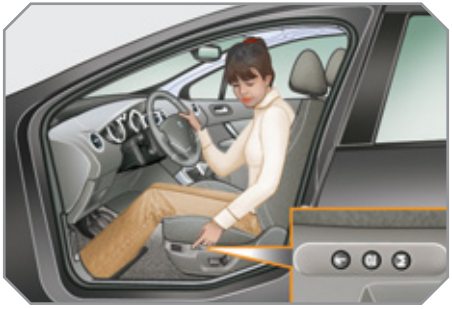
☞ Use the adjustment dial, placed on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:

0: Off.
1: Low.
2: Medium.
3: High.



Storing driving positions

System which takes into account the electrical settings of the driver's seat and door mirrors. It enables you to store up to two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.



Storing a position

Using buttons M/1/2

☞ Switch on the ignition.
☞ Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.
An audible signal is heard indicating that the position has been stored.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.
Do not try to store a driving position while driving.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

☞ Briefly press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal is heard indicating the end of the adjustment.

When the ignition is on, after a few consecutive position recalls, the function will be deactivated until the engine is started, to prevent discharging of the battery.

Vehicle moving

☞ Press and hold button **1** or **2** until the audible signal is heard indicating the end of the adjustment.

REAR SEATS

Bench seat, the left-hand (2/3) or right-hand (1/3) section of which can be folded to adapt the boot load space.

Rear head restraints

These have a high position (comfort and safety) and a low position (rear visibility).



They can also be removed.

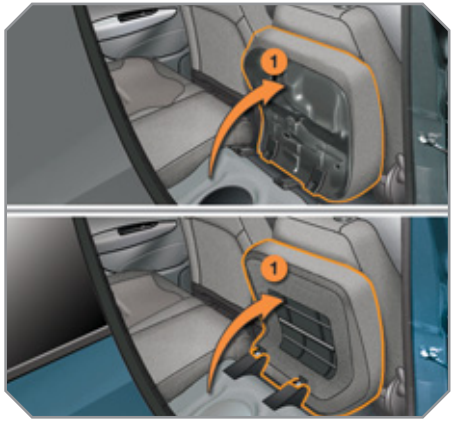
To remove a head restraint:

- pull the head restraint fully forwards and upwards at the same time,
- then, press the lug **A**.

> **!** Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and in the high position when passengers are seated in the rear.

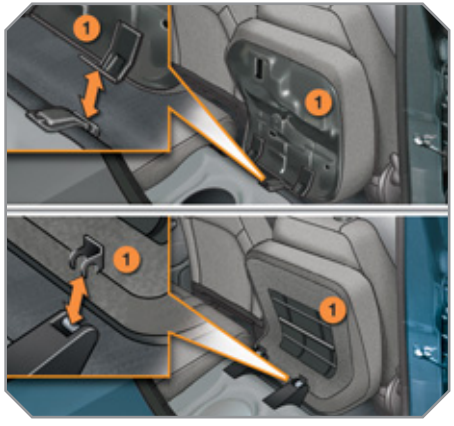
Removing the seat cushion

- Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary.
- Raise the seat cushion **1** lifting it with a hand from the rear.
- Tilt the seat cushion **1** fully against the front seat.
- Remove the seat cushion **1** from its fixings by pulling upwards.



Refitting the seat cushion

- Position the seat cushion **1** vertically in its fixings.
- Fold down the seat cushion **1**.
- Press on the seat cushion to secure it.



Folding the seat

In order to fold a rear seat without any risk of damage, **always start with the seat cushion, never with the seat back:**

- move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary,
- raise the seat cushion **1** lifting it with a hand from the rear,
- tilt the seat cushion **1** fully against the front seat,



- check that the seat belt is positioned correctly on the side of the seat back,
- lower or remove the head restraints if necessary,
- pull the control **2** forwards to release the seat back **3**,
- tilt the seat back **3**.



The seat cushion **1** can be removed to increase the loading volume.

Returning the seat back to its original position

When returning the rear seat back to its original position:

- put the seat back **3** in the upright position and secure it,
- fold the seat cushion **1**,
- refit the head restraints or put them back in place.

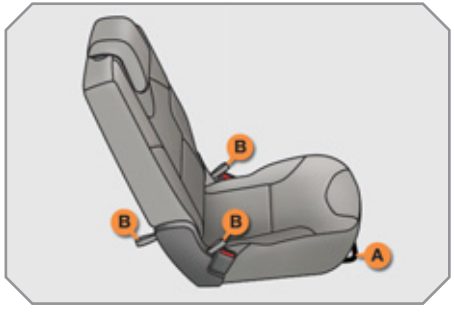


When returning the rear seat back to its original position, take care not to trap the seat belts and ensure that their buckles are positioned correctly.

REAR SEATS

In the 2nd row, these three seats are identical and can be adjusted for your comfort. They can be placed in the table position, folded or removed to obtain a variety of loading configurations.

Forwards-backwards adjustment



- Raise the bar **A** and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Seat back angle adjustment

- Pull one of the straps **B**, located at the front of the seat, then adjust the angle to one of the 7 positions offered.
- Release the strap to lock the seat back in this position.

During the forwards-backwards and seat back angle adjustment operations, take care not to apply any force to the load space cover roller.

Table position



- Place the head restraint in the low position.
- Pull one of the straps **B**, located at the front of the seat.
- Fold the seat back fully onto the seat cushion; the seat automatically moves back fully.
- Press on the seat back to lock it.

You can also carry out these operations from the 3rd row using one of the straps **B**, located at the rear of the seat.

Folding

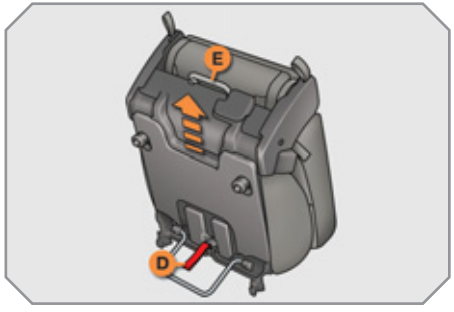


Once the seat has been placed in the table position, carry out the following operations:

- move back the seat fully using the bar **A**,
- raise the lever **C**, located at the rear right of the seat, to release the rear feet,
- raise the seat fully so that it remains in the **fully folded** position.

These operations allow access to the 3rd row, exit from the 3rd row and folding of the seats from the boot.

Removal

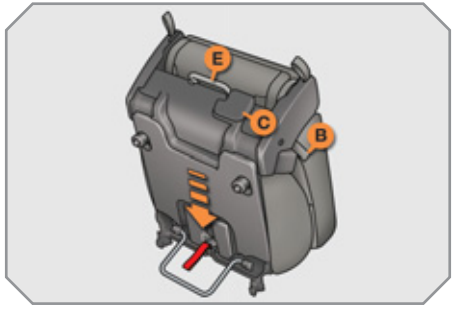


Once the seat has been folded, carry out the following operations:

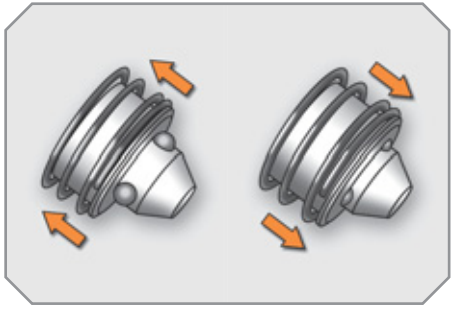
- pull the red strap **D** to release the front feet of the seat,
- lift the seat and carry it using the carrying handle **E**.

> **!** Never use the adjustment straps to remove, install or carry a seat; use the carrying handle **E** provided for this purpose (weight of the seat: approximately 18 kg).
>
> Once the seat has been removed, in order to protect its electronic systems, it must be stored in a clean, dry location sheltered from bad weather.

Installation



- Check that no object is obstructing the anchorages on the floor, so preventing correct locking seat's feet.
- Carry the seat using the carrying handle **E**.
- Put the front feet of the seat in place in the corresponding anchorages.
- Raise the lever **C** to check that the rear feet are released.



Locked **Released**

- Tilt the folded seat rearwards; the front and rear feet lock automatically.
- Pull one of the straps **B** to release the seat back, then raise it.

ADDITIONAL SEATS

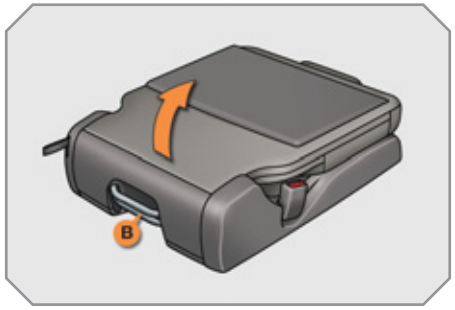
In the 3rd row, these two seats are identical and are used for the occasional carrying of additional passengers. They can be placed in the table position, folded or removed to obtain a variety of loading configurations.

Table position



- Place the head restraint in the low position.
- Pull the strap **A**, located at the rear left of the seat.
- Fold the seat back onto the seat cushion.

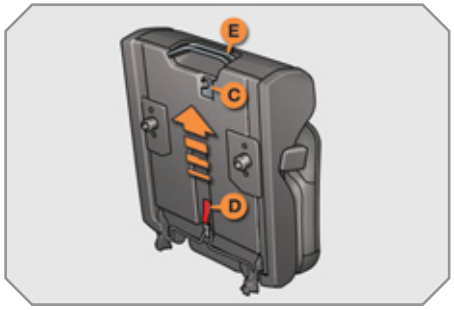
Folding



Once the seat has been placed in the table position, carry out the following operations:

- remove the load space cover roller,
- raise the bar **B**, located at the rear of the seat, to release the rear feet,
- raise the seat and secure it to the head restraint rod of the 2nd row seat, using the integrated retaining strap **C**.

Removal

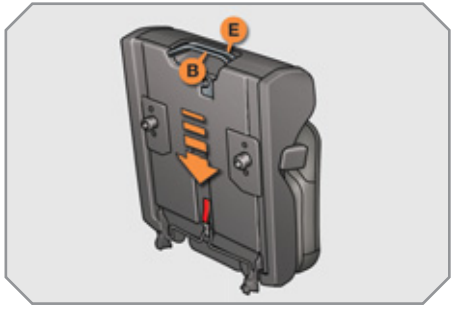


Once the seat has been folded, carry out the following operations:

- pull the red strap **D** to release the front feet of the seat,
- lift the seat and carry it using the carrying handle **E**,
- put the anchorage covers back in place to obtain a flat boot floor.

! Never use the adjustment and retaining straps to remove, install or carry a seat; use the carrying handle **E** provided for this purpose (weight of the seat: approximately 15 kg).

Installation



- First remove the anchorage covers on the floor.
- Carry the seat using the carrying handle **E**.
- Put the seat's front feet in place in the corresponding anchorages.
- Raise the bar **B** to check that the rear feet are released.
- Tilt the folded seat rearwards; the front and rear feet lock automatically.
- Raise the seat back.

SEAT MODULARITY AND VARIOUS CONFIGURATIONS

Designed to be modular, your vehicle offers numerous seat installation and loading configurations.

Special features

The outer seats of the 2nd row can be moved inwards, once the central seat has been removed.

The 2nd row seats can be installed in the 3rd row.

Conversely, the 3rd row seats cannot be installed in the 2nd row.

Do not seat passengers in the 3rd row if the 2nd row seats are in the **fully folded** position.

Operations to change the existing configuration must only be carried out when stationary (see the "Rear seats" and "Additional seats" sections of the SW individual rear seats).

Examples of configurations

7 seats



5 seats with additional seats folded



5 seats



5 seats with 2nd row seats moved inwards



Transporting long objects



Loading a large volume







MIRRORS



Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

Demisting - Defrosting

If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen (refer to the "Rear screen demist-defrost" page).

Adjustment



- Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- Return control **A** to the central position.

The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.

Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

- From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Never fold or unfold the electric folding mirrors manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.



Programming

- With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.

The adjustment is stored immediately.

Switching on

- With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

Switching off

- Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.

or

- Return control **A** to the central position.

The mirror glass returns to its initial position.

The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:

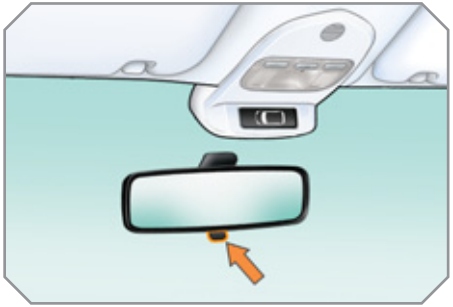
- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- if the engine is switched off.

Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, useful in poor light.

Manual day/night model



Adjustment

- Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day/night position

- Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

! As a safety precaution, the mirrors must be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

Automatic day/night model

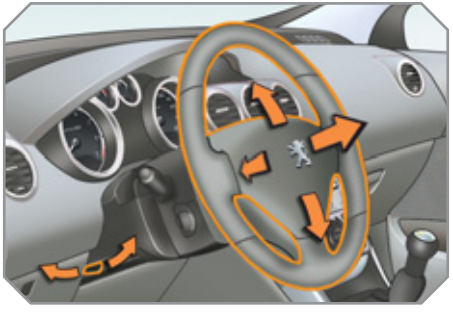
By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.



It has an anti-dazzle system which darkens the mirror glass: this reduces any driver discomfort caused by the light beams of following vehicles, the sun...

In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT



- **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Push the control lever to lock the steering wheel.

As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

REMOTE CONTROL KEY

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.



Unlocking the vehicle

Unfolding the key

☞ First press this button to unfold the key.

Unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control



☞ Briefly press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle.

or

☞ Press and hold the closed padlock to close the windows automatically in addition to locking (according to version).

Normal locking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle.

Locking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

If one of the doors, the rear screen or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.

When the vehicle is locked, if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will relock automatically after thirty seconds unless a door is opened.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Deadlocking using the remote control



☞ Short press on the closed padlock to lock the vehicle

or

☞ Long press on the closed padlock to lock the vehicle and also close the windows (depending on version).

☞ Short press on the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle.

☞ Turn the key to the right again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.

It also deactivates the manual central control button.

Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



Folding the key

☞ First press this button to fold the key.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press the closed padlock on the remote control.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for a few seconds.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

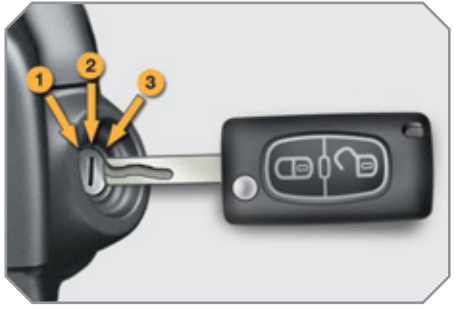
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Starting the vehicle

- Insert the key in the ignition switch.
  The system recognises the starting code.
- Turn the key fully towards the dashboard to position **3 (Starting)**.
- When the engine starts, release the key.



Switching the vehicle off

- Immobilise the vehicle.
- Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
- Remove the key from the ignition switch.

A heavy object (key fob...), attached to the key and weighing down on its shaft in the ignition switch, could cause a malfunction.

Key left in the "Ignition" position

If the key has been left in the ignition switch, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition)**.

Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- Then, reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Reinitialisation

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition)**.
- Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR1620/3 volts.

This replacement battery is available from PEUGEOT dealers.

If the battery is flat, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

- Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- Clip the casing.
- Reinitialise the remote control.

Lost keys

Visit a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's V5 registration document and your personal identification documents.

The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a replacement key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

ALARM

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring.

- **Exterior perimeter**

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

- **Interior volumetric**

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the wires of the siren are put out of service or damaged.

For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system



Activation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp on the button flashes once per second.

After the locking button on the remote control is pressed, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm system is deactivated: the indicator lamp on the button switches off.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,

Deactivation of the interior volumetric monitoring

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is lit continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control immediately.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp on the button flashes once per second.

To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivation of the interior volumetric monitoring

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control to deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control to activate all the monitoring functions.

The indicator lamp on the button again flashes once per second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp on the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops. The indicator lamp on the button switches off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed lighting of the indicator lamp on the button indicates a malfunction of the system.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Automatic activation*

2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the system is activated automatically.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

* According to country.

ELECTRIC WINDOWS

Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system and a deactivation system to prevent misuse of the rear controls.



1. **Driver's electric window control.**
2. **Passenger's electric window control.**
3. **Rear right electric window control.**
4. **Rear left electric window control.**
5. **Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls.**

One-touch electric windows

There are two options:

- **manual mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.

- **automatic mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.
  - ☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.

If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control panel of the passenger door concerned, and vice versa.

After approximately ten consecutive complete opening/closing movements of the window, a protection function is activated which only authorises closing of the window to prevent damage to the electric window motor.

Once the window is closed, the controls will become available again after approximately 40 minutes.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), immediately after the movement is reversed:

- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
- ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Reinitialisation

If a window does not rise automatically, its operation must be reinitialised:

- pull the control until the window stops,
- release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivation of the rear electric window and door controls



- For the safety of your children, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls regardless of their position.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.

Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.

This control also deactivates the interior controls for the rear doors (refer to the section "Child safety - § Electric child lock").

Any other status of the indicator light indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

DOORS

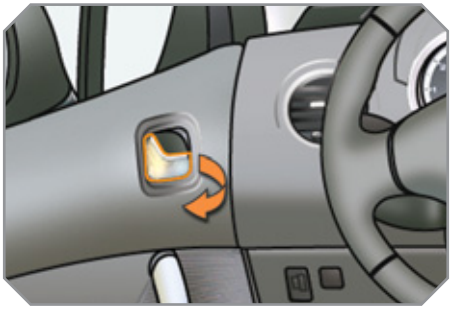
Opening

From outside



☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

From inside



☞ Pull on the front door control to open the door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

☞ Pull on the rear door control to open the door; this unlocks the door concerned only.

Version with deadlocking

The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is deadlocked.

Closing

When a door is not closed correctly:

- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed higher than 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

Manual centralised control

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors from the inside.



Locking

☞ Press button **A** to lock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp on the button comes on.

If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

☞ Press button **A** again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp on the button switches off.

If the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and button **A** is inactive.

☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic centralised control

System which provides full automatic locking or unlocking of the doors, the boot and the rear screen while driving.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

Locking

When the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors, the boot and the rear screen lock automatically.

If one of the doors is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

If the boot or the rear screen is open, the automatic central locking of the doors is active.

Unlocking

☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press button **A** to unlock the doors, the boot and the rear screen temporarily.

Activation



☞ Press button **A** for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Deactivation

☞ Press button **A** again for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Emergency control

To lock or unlock the doors manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

Locking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the rear.

Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the front.

Locking the front and rear passenger doors



☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not activated.

☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.

☞ Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door

☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.

Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

☞ Pull the interior door opening control.



BOOT



Opening

☞ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the handle and raise the tailgate.

Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.

If the tailgate is not closed correctly:



- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

Tailgate release

System for mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking malfunction.

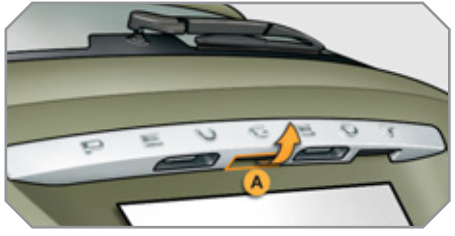


Unlocking

☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.

☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.

BOOT



Opening

☞ After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, with the rear screen closed, pull the handle **A** and raise the tailgate.

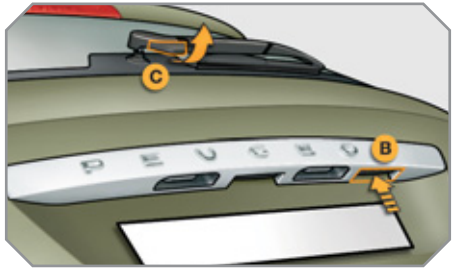
Closing

☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.

If the tailgate is not closed correctly:

- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

REAR SCREEN



Opening

☞ After unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the key, boot closed, press control **B** to partially open the rear screen

☞ Raise the rear screen using the base **C** of the wiper arm.

The boot and the rear screen cannot both be open at the same time.



Closing

☞ Lower the rear screen guiding it with the wiper arm until it is closed.

If the rear screen is not closed correctly:

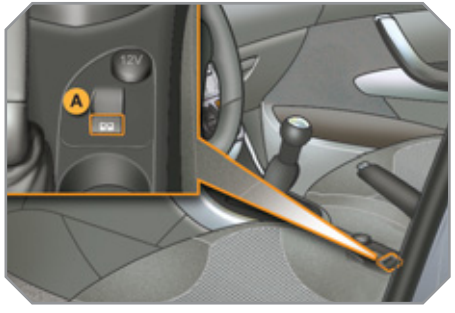
- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds.

If the rear screen is unlocked, the central locking does not take place.

PANORAMIC SUNROOF

Component which has a tinted glass panoramic surface to increase the light and visibility in the passenger compartment.

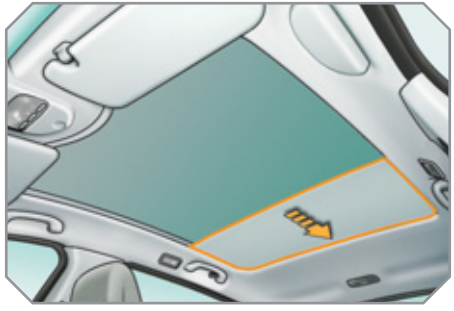
Fitted with an electric blind in several sections to improve temperature and noise related comfort.



One-touch electric blind

There are two options for opening and closing:

- **manual mode**
  - ☞ Pull or press control **A** gently.
    The blind stops when you release the control.



- **automatic mode**
  - ☞ Pull or press control **A** firmly.
    One press opens or closes the blind completely.
    Pressing the control again stops the blind.

Safety anti-pinch

In automatic mode and at the end of its travel, if the blind meets an obstacle while closing it stops and moves back slightly.

Reinitialisation: if the blind's supply is cut off while it is moving, the safety anti-pinch must be reinitialised:

- ☞ press the control until the blind is fully closed,
- ☞ continue to press for at least 3 seconds. A slight movement of the blind will then be noticeable, confirming the reinitialisation.

If the blind re-opens during a closing manoeuvre, and immediately after it stops:

- ☞ pull the control until the blind is fully open,
- ☞ press the control until the blind is fully closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

If the blind meets an obstacle during operation, you must reverse the movement of the blind. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the blind control, he must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the blind.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the blind.

FUEL TANK

Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen. When it first comes on, you have **approximately 6 litres** of fuel remaining.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp comes on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. Depending on version, this audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the level drops towards **"0"**.

Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

If you run out of fuel (Diesel), refer also to the "Checks" section.

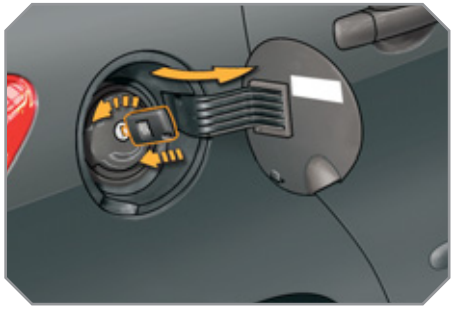
Filling

A label affixed to the inside of the flap reminds you of the type of fuel to be used according to your engine.

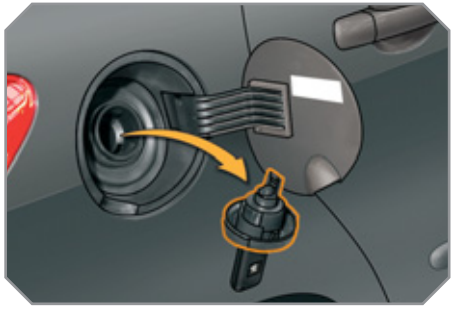
More than 5 litres of fuel must be added in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

To fill the tank safely:

- **it is essential that the engine is switched off,**
- open the fuel filler flap,
- insert the key in the cap, then turn it to the left,



- remove the cap and secure it on the hook, located on the inside of the flap,
- fill the tank, but **do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle**; this could cause malfunctions.



When filling is complete:

- refit the cap,
- turn the key to the right, then remove it from the cap,
- close the flap.

Operating fault

A fuel gauge malfunction is indicated by the return of the fuel gauge needle to zero.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

The key cannot be removed from the lock until the cap is put back on the tank.

Opening the cap may cause an inrush of air. This vacuum, which is perfectly normal, is caused by the sealing of the fuel system.

Quality of the fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are perfectly compatible with E10 type petrol biofuels (containing 10 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.

For Brazil only, special vehicles are marketed to run on fuels containing up to 100 % ethanol (E100 type).

Quality of the fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are perfectly compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

The B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines; however, this use is subject to strict application of the special servicing conditions. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

Special features of BioFlex engines



A BioFlex vehicle has been designed to run on unleaded petrol (RON 95 or RON 98) or ethanol (this is a mixture containing 85 % ethanol and 15 % unleaded petrol, called E85).

So, regardless of the quantity of fuel remaining in your tank and irrespective of its type (RON 95/RON 98, E85 or a mixture of the two), you can fill your tank at any time with unleaded petrol (RON 95 or RON 98) or ethanol (E85).

There is no problem driving on unleaded petrol only with this vehicle.

In winter conditions, starting the engine from cold may sometimes prove difficult. During these very cold periods you are advised to use unleaded petrol rather than E85 to ensure optimum starting conditions.

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROLS

Control stalk for the selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively in relation to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are fitted to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- a rear foglamp to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better forward vision,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

Programming

Various automatic lighting control modes are also available depending on options:

- guide-me-home lighting,
- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- directional lighting.

Model without AUTO lighting



Model with AUTO lighting



Manual controls

The lighting commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

A. Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

0 Lamps off.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Sidelamps only.

Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

B. Stalk for switching headlamps: pull to switch the lighting between dipped headlamps/main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Lighting of the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument panel confirms the switching on of the lighting selected.

Model with rear foglamp only



Model with front foglamps and a rear foglamp



C. Foglamp selection ring.

The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.

Rear foglamp

☞ To switch on the foglamp, turn the ring **C** forwards.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

☞ To switch off all of the lighting, turn the ring **C** rearwards.

Front and rear foglamps

Rotate and release the ring **C**:

☞ forwards a first time to switch on the front foglamps.

☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamp,

☞ rearwards a first time to switch off the rear foglamp

☞ rearwards a second time to switch of the front fog lamps.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or when the dipped headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps will remain on.

☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

In good or rainy weather, both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamp are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the brightness sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to switch off the front foglamps and the rear foglamp when they are no longer necessary.

Switching off of the lamps when the ignition is switched off

On switching off the ignition, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam if guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lamps after the ignition is switched off

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate ring **A** to the **"0"** position - lamps off, then to the desired position.

On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.

The lamps, with the exception of the sidelamps, switch off automatically after a maximum duration of thirty minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Daytime running lamps

Daytime lighting, compulsory in certain countries, which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.

This function is assured:

- in countries where it is imposed by regulations,

  by illumination of the dipped beam headlamps with the sidelamps and number plate lamps; this function cannot be deactivated.
- for other countries where it is provided,

  by the use of dedicated lamps; this function can be activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The instruments and controls (instrument panel, multifunction screen, air conditioning control panel, ...) are not illuminated, except in night mode with manual or automatic illumination of headlamps.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.

☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



Activation

☞ Turn ring **A** to the **"AUTO"** position. The automatic illumination of headlamps is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

Deactivation

☞ Turn ring **A** to a position other than **"AUTO"**. Deactivation is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

Coupling with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

Association with the automatic illumination of headlamps provides "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration to 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the multifunction screen configuration menu (except in the case of the monochrome screen A, for which the duration is set: 60 seconds),
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic illumination of headlamps is in operation.

Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the brightness sensor, the lighting come on, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

In fog or snow, the brightness sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the brightness sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

EXTERIOR WELCOME LIGHTING

The remote switching on of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated according to the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor.

Switching on

☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

Programming



The lighting duration is selected via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

The duration of the welcome lighting is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF HALOGEN HEADLAMPS



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted in relation to the load in the vehicle.

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
-. 3 people.
1. 5 people.
-. Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised load.
-. Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised load.

The initial setting is position **"0"**.

AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF XENON HEADLAMPS



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, in relation to the load in the vehicle.

If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp and/or the service warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

Do not touch the xenon headlamp bulbs. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function enables the light beams to provide improved lighting of the side of the road when cornering.

The use of this function, from approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) and associated with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.

with directional lighting



without directional lighting



Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

Operating fault

If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the function is inactive.

The status of the function remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

WIPER CONTROLS

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning.

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions.

Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available according to the following options:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Model with intermittent wiping



Model with AUTO wiping



Manual controls

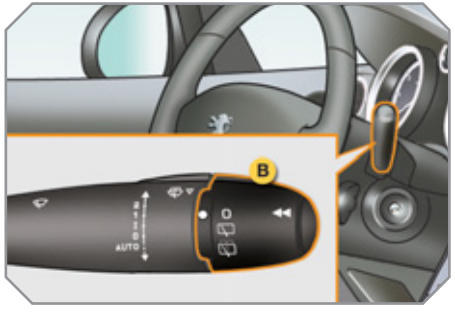
The wiper commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the stalk **A** and the ring **B**.

Windscreen wipers

A. Wiping speed selection stalk:

2	fast (heavy rain),
1	normal (moderate rain),
I	intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle),
0	park,
↓	single wipe (press downwards),
	or
AUTO ↓	automatic, then single wipe (see following page).

Rear wiper



B. Rear wiper selection ring:

park,

intermittent wipe,

wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

Windscreen and headlamp wash



☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped beam headlamps are on**.

Screenwash/headlamp wash low

In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the minimum level of the reservoir is reached, this warning lamp and/or the service warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Next time you stop, fill the screenwash/headlamp wash reservoir.

The warning lamp is displayed when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is filled.

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing the stalk downwards to the **"AUTO"** position.

It is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.



Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving the stalk upwards then returning it to position **"0"**.

It is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

The automatic rain sensitive wipers must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing the stalk downwards.

Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, to avoid damaging the wiper blades, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

In the moment following switching off of the ignition, any action on the stalk positions the wipers vertically on the windscreen.

To park the wipers after this has been done, switch on the ignition and operate the stalk.

For maintain the effectiveness of the "flat-blade" wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen.
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

COURTESY LAMPS





1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Map reading lamps**
3. **Rear side reading lamps**
4. **Rear courtesy lamp**

Take care not to place anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when a door is opened,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

With the "permanent lighting" mode, the duration of lighting varies depending on the context:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

When the front courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp will also come on, unless it is in the "permanently off" position.

To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, place it in the "permanently off" position.

Map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

Rear side reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, the first press of the reading lamp switch switches on the reading lamp in "permanent lighting" mode.

☞ Following a second press, it comes on:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when a door is opened,
- when the remote control locking button is pressed, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

INTERIOR MOOD LIGHTING

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.



Switching on

At night, the footwell lighting and the front courtesy mood lamp come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

INTERIOR WELCOME LIGHTING

The remote switching on of the passenger compartment lighting makes your entry into the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated in accordance with the light intensity detected by the brightness sensor.

Switching on

☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The front door sill lighting, the footwell lighting and the courtesy lamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The interior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time or when one of the doors is opened.

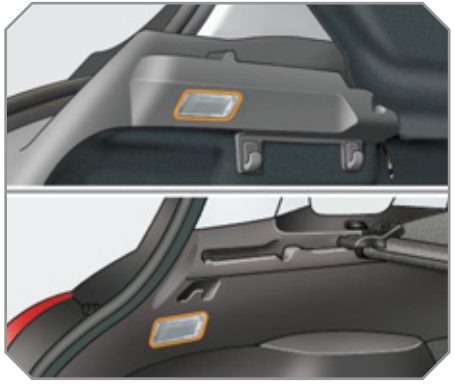
Programming



The lighting duration is selected via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

The welcome lighting duration is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

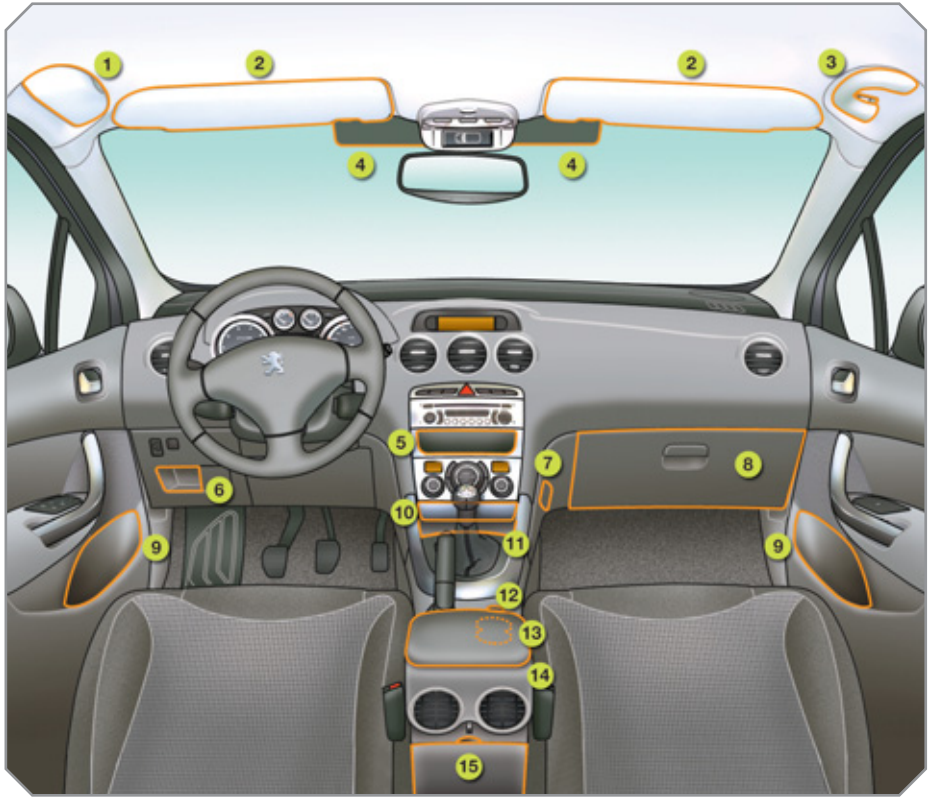
BOOT LAMP



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and switches off automatically when the boot is closed.

The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

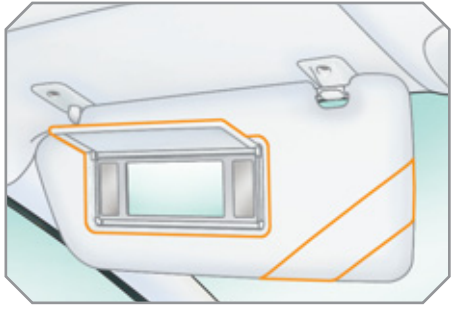


INTERIOR FITTINGS

1. **Spectacles storage**
2. **Sun visor**
   (see details on following page)
3. **Grab handle with coat hook**
4. **Toll card/car park ticket windows**
   (see details on following page)
5. **Storage compartment**
6. **Oddments box**
7. **Bag hook**
8. **Illuminated glove box**
   (see details on following page)
9. **Door trays**
10. **Illuminated ashtray**
    (see details on following page)
11. **Storage compartment with non-slip carpet**
12. **12 V accessories socket**
    (see details on following page)
13. **Cup holder**
14. **Front armrest**
    (see details on following page)
15. **Storage box**

SUN VISOR

Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated courtesy mirror.

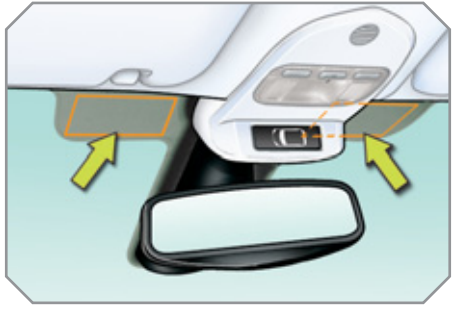


☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is lit automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

TOLL CARD/CAR PARK TICKET WINDOWS

Facility for affixing toll cards and/or car park tickets.



These windows are located on each side of the base of the rear view mirror.

They are two non-reflective areas of the athermic windscreen.

The athermic windscreen limits heating of the passenger compartment by reducing the effects of the sun's rays (ultra-violet). It consists of a reflective layer, which also blocks certain radio-electric signals (toll card payments, ...).

ILLUMINATED GLOVE BOX



This has areas for storing a bottle of water, the vehicle's handbook pack...

Its lid has areas for storing a pen, a pair of spectacles, tokens, cards, a can...

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

The lamp comes on when the lid is opened.

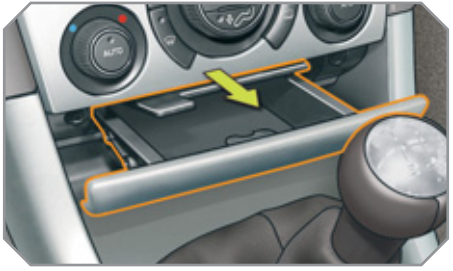
If your vehicle is fitted with air conditioning, the glove box has an air vent **A**, which can be opened or closed. This distributes the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

BAG HOOK



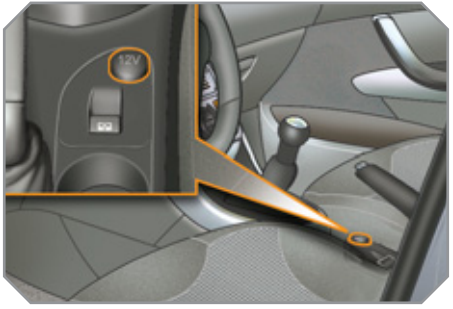
- Press the lower part of the hook to unfold it.
- Hang the strap of your bag on the hook to secure it.

ILLUMINATED ASHTRAY



- Pull the drawer for access to the ashtray.
- To empty the ashtray, after opening, press the tab and remove the ashtray.

12 V ACCESSORIES SOCKET



- To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

This connection box, consisting of a USB port, is located in the front armrest.

It permits the connection of portable equipment, such as an iPod® digital audio player of generation 5 or later or a USB stick.

It reads the audio file formats (mp3, ogg, wma, wav...) which are transmitted to your audio equipment and played via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering wheel controls or the audio equipment control panel and display them on the multifunction screen.

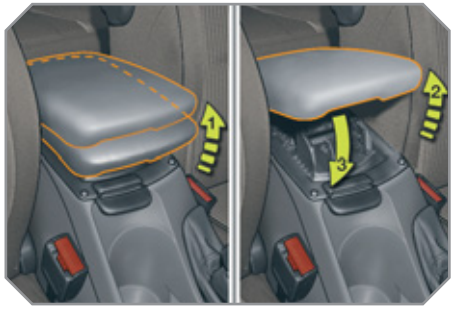
When it is in use, the portable equipment charges automatically.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Peugeot Connect Media" or "Peugeot Connect Sound" part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.

FRONT ARMREST

Comfort and storage device for the driver and front passenger.

The height and length of the armrest cover can be adjusted for greater comfort.



Height adjustment

- ☞ Raise the cover to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ If you raise the cover slightly beyond the high position, guide it when lowering it to the low position.



Longitudinal adjustment

- ☞ Slide the cover fully forwards or rearwards.

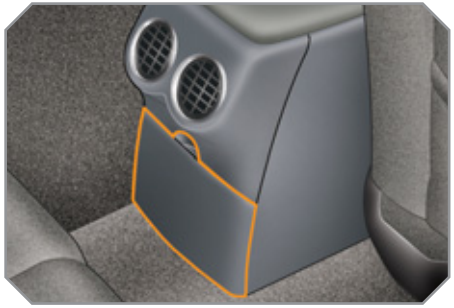
Storage



The armrest's compartment can hold up to 6 CDs.

- ☞ Raise the lever **1**.
- ☞ Raise the cover fully.

STORAGE BOX



Storage area, built into the rear of the front armrest, for the rear passengers.

- ☞ To empty the box, after opening, press the tab and remove it.

MATS

Removable carpet protection component.

Fitting

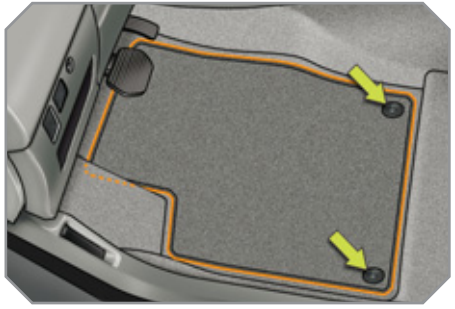
When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- move the seat as far back as possible,
- unclip the fixings,
- remove the mat.



Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- position the mat correctly,
- refit the fixings by pressing,
- check that the mat is secured correctly.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; their use is essential,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

STORAGE DRAWER



The storage drawer is located under the front passenger's seat.

Opening

- Raise the front of the drawer and pull it.

Removal

- Bring the drawer to the end of its travel.
- Press the ends of the slides.
- Raise the drawer and pull it fully.

Refitting

- Engage the drawer in its slides.
- At the end of its travel, press on the top of the drawer to secure it.

Do not place heavy objects in the drawer.

REAR ARMREST

Comfort and storage device for the rear passengers.



- Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.
- Raise the cover to gain access to its storage compartment.

This has a storage tray, two cup holders and two pen holders.

SKI FLAP

Device for storing and transporting long objects.

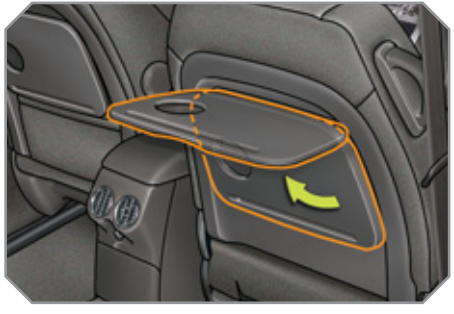


Opening

- Lower the rear armrest.
- Pull the flap handle downwards.
- Lower the flap.
- Load the objects from inside the boot.

"AIRCRAFT" TYPE TABLES

Installed on the back of each front seat, these allow you to set down objects and each is equipped with a cup holder.



- To use the table, raise it fully until it locks in the high position.
- To store the table, lower it, passing the point of resistance, to the low position.

! On the passenger side, do not forget to fold the "aircraft" type table before placing the seat in the table position.

Do not place hard or heavy objects on the table. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of emergency braking or impact.



BOOT FITTINGS

1. **Rear parcel shelf**
   (see details on following page)
2. **Hooks**
   (see details on following page)
3. **Stowing rings**
4. **Luggage retaining strap**
5. **Enclosed storage tray**
6. **Open storage tray**
7. **Storage box**
   (see details on following page)

Rear parcel shelf



To remove the shelf:

☞ unhook the two cords,

☞ raise the shelf slightly, then remove it.

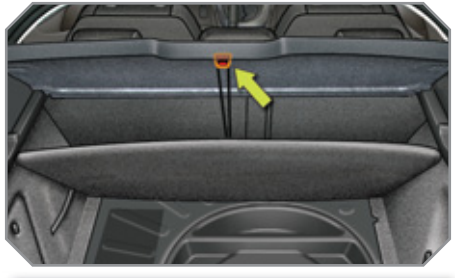
There are several options for storing the shelf:

- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat at the base of the boot.

Hooks



The hooks permit the securing of shopping bags.



When changing a wheel

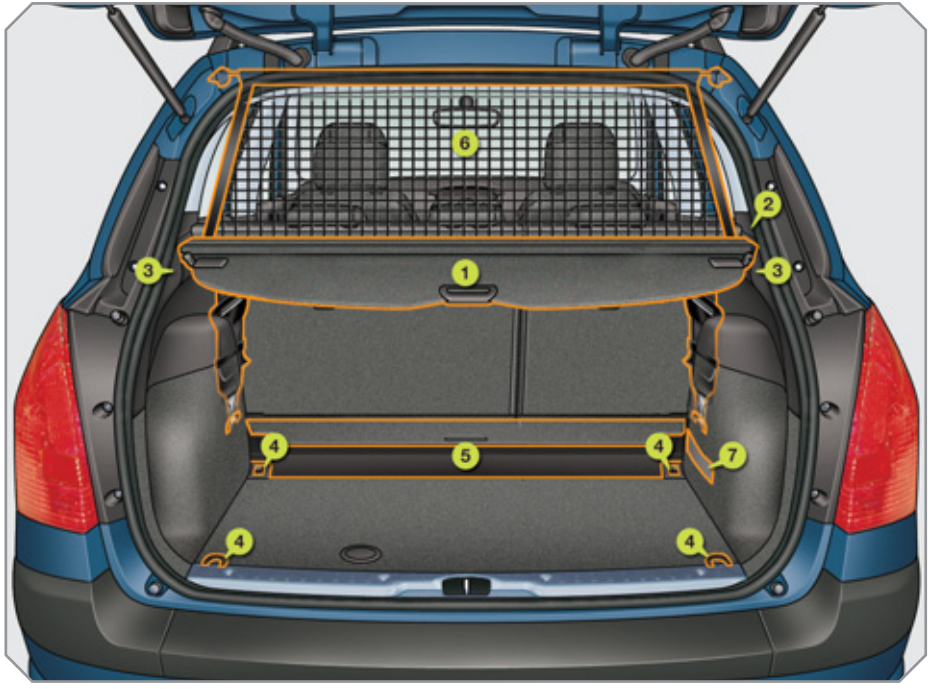
An additional hook, under the shelf, permits easy access to the spare wheel by retaining the boot carpet by means of its cord.

Storage box



☞ Raise the boot carpet for access to the storage box.

This has areas for the storage a box of spare bulbs, a first aid kit, a temporary tyre repair kit, two warning triangles...



BOOT FITTINGS

1. **Rear parcel shelf**
   (see details on following page)
2. **12 V accessories socket**
   (see details on following page)
3. **Hooks**
   (see details on following page)
4. **Stowing rings**
5. **Storage tray**
6. **High load retaining net**
   (see details on following page)
7. **Luggage retaining strap**

Rear parcel shelf

This consists of four sections three of which can be folded back on each other.

There are several options for storing the rear parcel shelf:

- either folded back on itself near the rear seats (1),
- or folded back on itself and stored in a location provided under the rear seats (2).

To fold it from the boot:

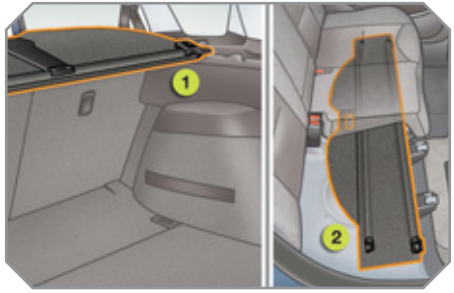
- ☞ unclip the load space cover from its side supports,
- ☞ take hold of the load space cover by its handle **A**,
- ☞ fold it concertina-style to the rear seats.

To unfold it from the boot:

- ☞ take hold of the load space cover by its handle **A**,
- ☞ unfold it to the boot pillars,
- ☞ clip the load space cover on its side supports.

Maximum loads

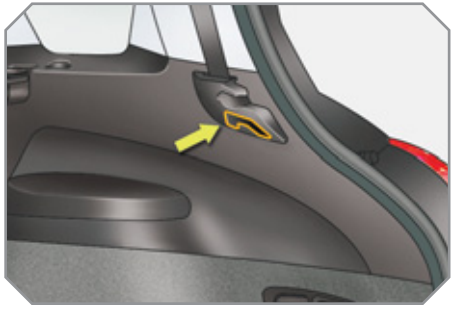
7.5 kg, rear parcel shelf unfolded with high load retaining net at row 2.







Hooks



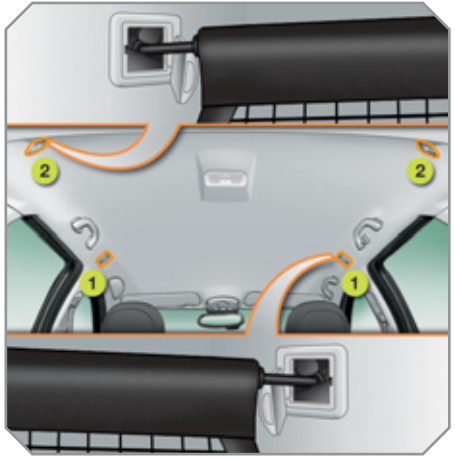
The hooks can be used to hold shopping bags.

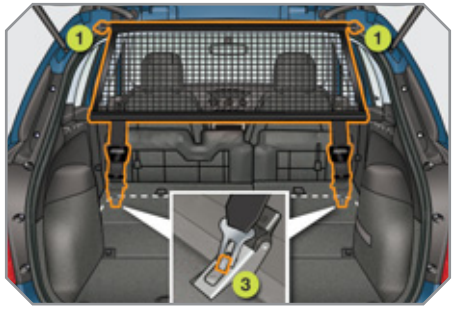
High load retaining net

Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this permits use of the entire loading volume up to the roof:

- behind the rear seats (row 2),
- behind the front seats (row 1) when the rear seats are folded.

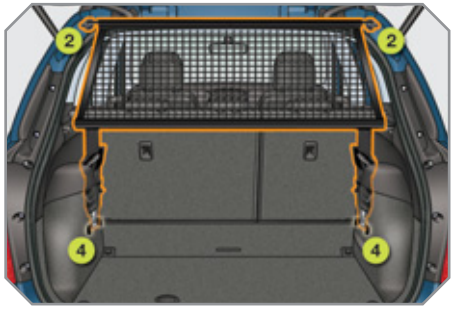
When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.





To use it in row 1:

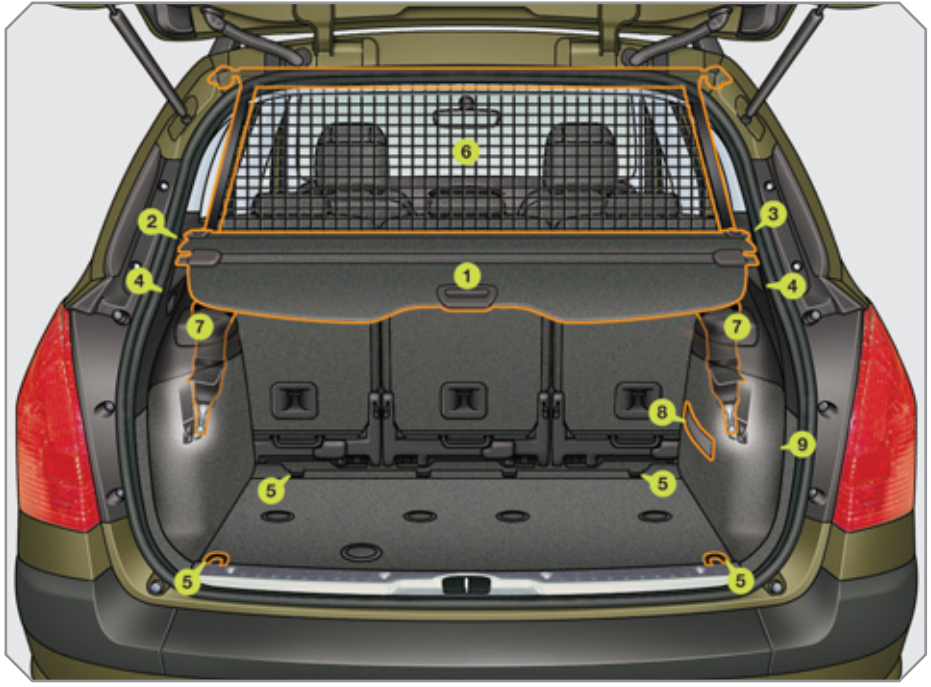
- open the covers of the upper fixings **1**,
- unroll the high load retaining net,
- position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **1**, then do the same with the other end,
- slacken the straps fully,
- fix the snap hook of each of the straps on the corresponding bar **3**, located under the cushion of the rear seats,
- fold the rear seats,
- tighten the straps,
- check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.



To use it in row 2:

- fold or remove the load space cover,
- open the covers of the upper fixings **2**,
- unroll the high load retaining net,
- position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **2**, then do the same with the other end,
- fix the snap hook of each of the straps in the corresponding ring **4**, located on the rear seats mechanism support,
- tighten the straps,
- check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.

This net can be stored in the storage tray on the floor.



BOOT FITTINGS

1. **Load space screen**
   (see details on following page)
2. **Storage box**
3. **12 V accessories socket**
   (see details on following page)
4. **Hooks**
   (see details on following page)
5. **Stowing rings**
6. **High load retaining net**
   (see details on following page)
7. **Rear armrests with can holder**
8. **Luggage retaining strap**
9. **Location for torch or for Hi-Fi amplifier**
   (see details on following page)

Load space screen

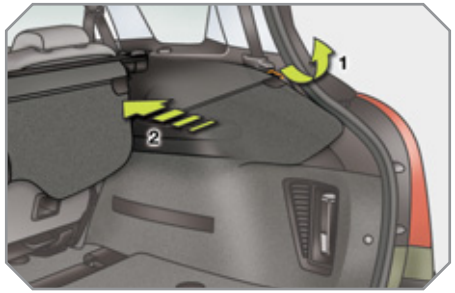
To remove the load space screen:

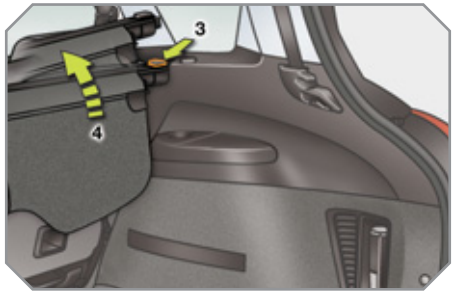
- remove the load space screen guides from the rails on the boot pillars,
- roll up the load space screen in its roller,
- pull and support the catch at one of the ends of the roller to release it,
- remove the roller from its support from the released end, then from the second.

To install the load space screen:

- position one of the ends of the roller in its support,
- insert the second end in its support; the catch locks automatically,
- unroll the load space screen to the boot pillars,
- insert the load space screen guides in the rails on the boot pillars.

To store the load space screen, place it at the boot sill, roller uppermost and flap facing inwards.







You can access the boot by opening the rear screen and raising the load space screen flap.

High load retaining net

Hooked onto the special upper and lower fixings, this permits use of the entire loading volume up to the roof behind the seats of the 2nd row.

When positioning the net, check that the strap loops are visible from the boot; this will make slackening or tightening easier.

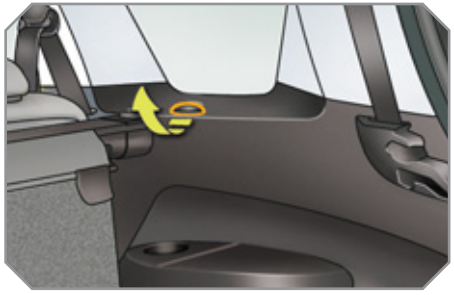




To use the net in the 2nd row (additional seats folded or removed):

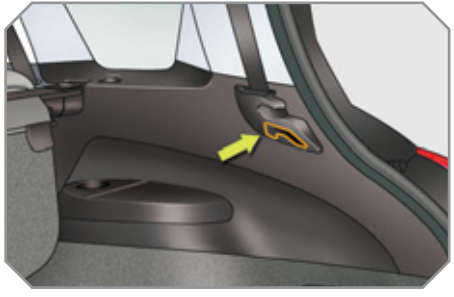
- roll up or remove the load space screen,
- open the covers of the upper fixings **1**,
- unroll the high load retaining net,
- position one of the ends of the net's metal bar in the corresponding upper fixing **1**, then do the same with the other end,
- attach the snap hook of each of the net's straps in the corresponding ring **2**, located on the lower fixing of the rear side seat belt,
- tighten the straps,
- check that the net is hooked and tightened correctly.

12 V accessory socket



- To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.
- Turn the key to the ignition position.

Hooks

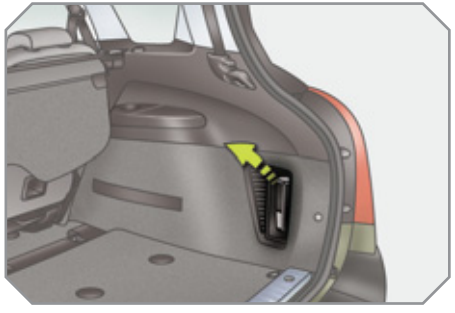


The hooks can be used to hold shopping bags.

Torch

This is a removable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to light the boot or as a torch.

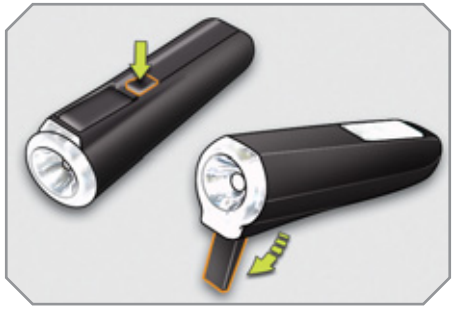
For the boot lamp function, refer to the "Visibility - § Boot lamp" section.



Operation

This torch operates with NiMH type rechargeable bateries.

It has an battery life of approximately 45 minutes and charges while you are driving.



Use

- ☞ Extract the torch from its location pulling it upwards.
- ☞ Press the switch, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- ☞ Unfold the support, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

Storing

- ☞ Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the lower part.

  If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

Side blinds

Fitted on the rear windows of the 2nd row, these protect your young children from the sun.



- ☞ Pull the blind by the central tab.
- ☞ Position the blind attachments on the corresponding hooks.

! Observe the polarities when fitting the rechargeable batteries.

Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal batteries.

i It the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

GENERAL POINTS RELATING TO CHILD SEATS

Although one of PEUGEOT's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearwards-facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

PEUGEOT recommends that children should travel in the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearwards-facing"** up to the age of 2,
- **"forwards-facing"** over the age of 2.

CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT

"Rearwards-facing"

When a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, it is essential that the passenger airbag is deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate**.

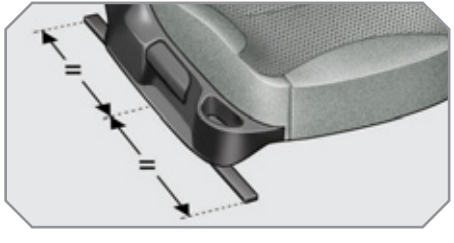


"Forwards-facing"

When a "forwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal position with the seat back upright and leave the passenger airbag activated.



Intermediate longitudinal position



* The rules for carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the current legislation in your country.





Passenger airbag OFF



CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**:

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg		Groups 1, 2 and 3: from 9 to 36 kg	
	**L1** "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearwards-facing position.		**L2** "KIDDY Life" The use of the restraining cushion is compulsory for carrying young children (from 9 to 18 kg).
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg			
	**L3** "RECARO Start"		**L4** "KLIPPAN Optima" From the age of 6 years (approximately 22 kg), the booster is used on its own.
	**L5** "RÖMER KIDFIX" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.		



LOCATION OF CHILD SEATS SECURED USING THE SEAT BELT

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat	**Weight of the child**/indicative age			
	Less than 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to ≈ 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From 1 to ≈ 3 years	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From 3 to ≈ 6 years	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From 6 to ≈ 10 years
Front passenger seat (c) - fixed - height adjustable 	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**
Rear outer seats 	**U**	**U***	**U***	**U***
Rear centre seat 	**U**	**U***	**U***	**U***

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
(c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.
U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "rear facing" and/or "forward facing".
U(R1): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal position.
U(R2): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position and moved back fully.

* The seat's head restraint must be removed and stored.

LOCATION OF CHILD SEATS SECURED USING THE SEAT BELT

In accordance with the European regulation, this table indicates the options for the installation of child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) depending on the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat		Weight of the child/indicative age			
		Below 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to ≈ 1 year	**9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From 1 to ≈ 3 years	**15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From 3 to ≈ 6 years	**22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From 6 to ≈ 10 years
1st row	Front passenger seat (c) - fixed - height adjustable 	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**	**U(R1)** **U(R2)**
2nd row	Outer Seat in standard position and moved inwards 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
	Centre Centre seat 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
3rd row	Outer Additional seat 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
	Outer 2nd row seat 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

(c) Consult the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.

U: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved, "rear facing" and/or "forwards facing".

U(R1): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal position.

U(R2): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to its highest position and moved back fully.

ADVICE ON CHILD SEATS

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle.

For optimum installation of the "forwards-facing" child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is in contact with the back of the vehicle's seat and that the head restraint does not cause any discomfort.

If the head restraint has to be removed, ensure that it is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking.

Children under the age of 10 must not travel in the "forwards-facing" position on the front passenger seat, unless the rear seats are already occupied by other children, cannot be used or are absent.

Deactivate the passenger airbag when a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the front seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

PEUGEOT recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".

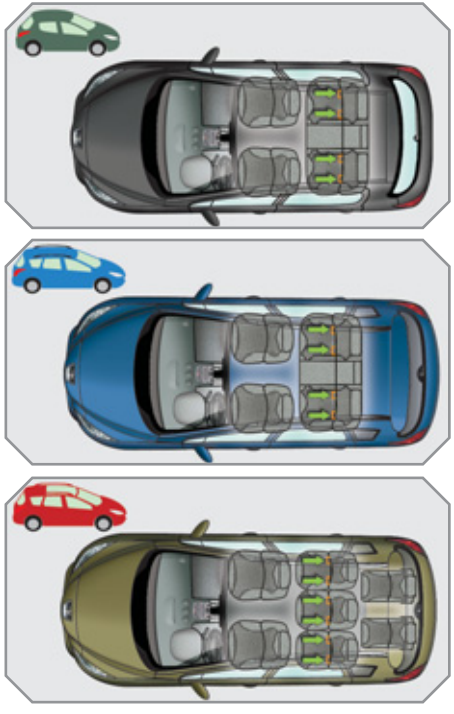
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

"ISOFIX" MOUNTINGS

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **new ISOFIX regulation**.

The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:

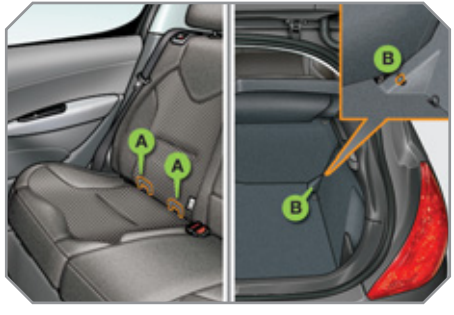


The Isofix mountings are three rings for each seat:

- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a label,
- a ring **B**, located behind the seat, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap.

When installing an ISOFIX child seat in the left hand rear position of the bench seat, before fitting the child seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle so as to avoid the child seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

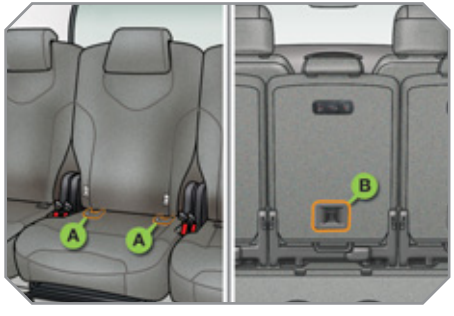
Rear seats



Rear seats



Rear seats of the 2nd row



This ISOFIX mounting system ensures fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two locks which are secured easily on the two rings **A**.

Some also have an **upper strap** (or top tether) which is attached to ring **B**.

To attach this strap, raise the vehicle seat's head restraint then pass the hook between its rods. Then fix the hook on ring **B** and tighten the upper strap.

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

For information regarding the ISOFIX child seats which can be installed in your vehicle, consult the summary table for the location of the ISOFIX child seats.

ISOFIX CHILD SEAT RECOMMENDED BY PEUGEOT AND APPROVED FOR YOUR VEHICLE

RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX (size category **B1**)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Installed in the forwards-facing position.
Fitted with an upper strap to be secured on the upper ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER.
Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying.

This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.

Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat given in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.



LOCATIONS FOR ISOFIX CHILD SEATS

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child/indicative age										
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years					
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Infant car seat***		**"rear facing"**			**"rear facing"**		**"forward facing"**			
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	
ISOFIX child seats universal and semi-universal which can be installed on the rear outer seats	**IL-SU****		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**			

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the upper strap.
IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:
- "rear facing" fitted with an upper strap or a stay,
- "forward facing" fitted with a stay,
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a stay.

For advice on securing of the upper strap, refer to the paragraph "ISOFIX mountings".

* Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
** The ISOFIX infant car seat, secured on the lower rings of a vehicle ISOFIX seat, occupies two rear seats.



LOCATIONS FOR ISOFIX CHILD SEATS

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

		Weight of the child/indicative age										
		Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Infant car seat***		**"rear facing"**			**"rear facing"**		**"forward facing"**		
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Rear ISOFIX seats; 2nd row seat	**Side**	**IL-SU**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		
	Centre	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		
	Outer, moved inwards	**X**		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		
Rear ISOFIX seats; 2nd row seat installed in the 3rd row	**Outer**	**X**		**X**			**X**		**IUF IL-SU**		

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the upper strap.
IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:
- "rear facing" fitted with an upper strap or a stay,
- "forward facing" fitted with a stay,
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a stay.

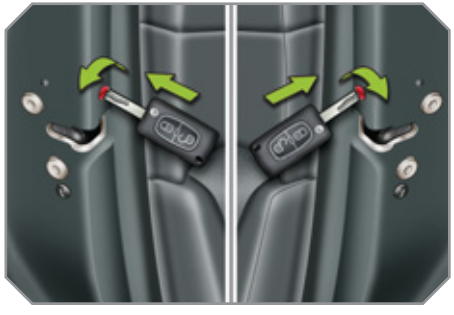
For advice on securing of the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" paragraph.
X: seat not suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX seat of the size category indicated.
* Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

MANUAL CHILD LOCK

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear door using its interior control.

The control is located on the edge of each rear door.

Locking



☞ Using the ignition key, turn the red control as far as it will go:
- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

☞ Using the ignition key, turn the red control as far as it will go:
- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

ELECTRIC CHILD LOCK

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls and use of the rear electric windows.

The control is located on the driver's door, with the electric window controls.

Activation



☞ Press this button.

The indicator lamp on the button comes on, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

This indicator lamp remains on until the child lock is deactivated.

Deactivation

☞ Press the button again.

The indicator lamp on the button switches off, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

This indicator lamp remains off until the child lock is activated.

! Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

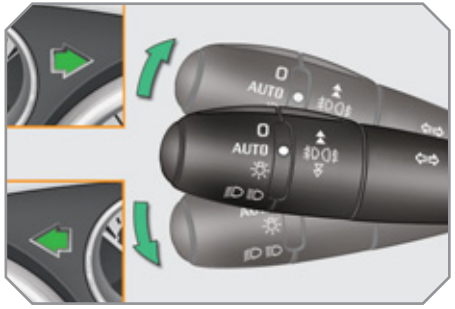
! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.

Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



- Left: lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.
- Right: raise the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.

If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

HAZARD WARNING LAMPS

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- Press this button, the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

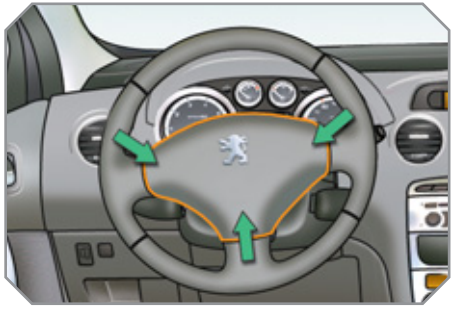
When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

HORN

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



- Press one of the spokes of the steering wheel.

Use the horn moderately and only in the following cases:

- immediate danger,
- when approaching an area where there is no visibility.

TYRE UNDER-INFLATION DETECTION

System which automatically and continuously checks the pressure of the tyres while driving.



Sensors fitted in each valve trigger a warning in the event of problem (speed above 12 mph (20 km/h)).

The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for the driver to be vigilant or to drive responsibly.

Under-infated tyre

This warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal, to locate the wheel concerned.

☞ Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible.

This check must be carried out when the tyres are cold.

Puncture

The **STOP** warning lamp comes on and/or this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen locating the wheel concerned.

☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so, avoiding any sudden movement of the steering wheel and the brakes.

☞ Repair or change the damaged wheel (punctured or very deflated tyre), and have the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

Sensor(s) not detected or faulty

This warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal, to locate the wheel or wheels which are not detected or to indicate a fault in the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer to replace the faulty sensor(s).

This message is also displayed when one of the wheels is away from the vehicle (being repaired) or when one or more wheels without a sensor are fitted.

If your vehicle is equipped with a spare wheel, this is not fitted with a sensor.

All repairs and changing of tyres on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer.

If, when changing a tyre, you install a wheel which is not detected by your vehicle (example: fitting of snow tyres), you must have the system reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer.

This system does not avoid the need to have the tyre pressures checked regularly (refer to the "Identification markings" section) to ensure that the optimum dynamic performance of the vehicle is maintained and prevent premature wear of the tyres, particularly in arduous driving conditions (heavy load, high speed).

The tyre pressures must be checked cold, at least once a month. Remember to check the pressure of the spare wheel.

The tyre under-inflation detection system may experience temporary interference due to electro-magnetic emissions on a frequency close to that used by the system.

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated PEUGEOT service.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

BRAKING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

In either case, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.

The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

Deactivation

If your vehicle is fitted with the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp petrol engine, you can deactivate this function; refer to the "Trajectory control systems - § Deactivation" section.

TRAJECTORY CONTROL SYSTEMS

Anti-skid regulation (ASR) and electronic stability programme (ESP)

The anti-skid regulation (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability programme acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp on the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, ...), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR and ESP systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.



☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button, located in the centre of the dashboard.

If this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel and the indicator lamp on the button comes on, this indicates that the ASR and ESP systems are deactivated.

On vehicles fitted with the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp engine, this action also deactivates emergency brake assistance and the automatic operation of hazard warning lamps.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h) (except in the case of the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp petrol engine).

☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button again to reactivate them manually.

On vehicles fitted with the 1.6 THP 200 hp engine, this action also reactivates emergency brake assistance and the automatic operation of hazard warning lamps.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, this indicates a malfunction of these systems.

Have the systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

The ESP/ASR systems offer exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

The correct functioning of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding the wheels (tyres and rims), the braking components, the electronic components and the repair and assembly procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

SEAT BELTS

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

Fastening

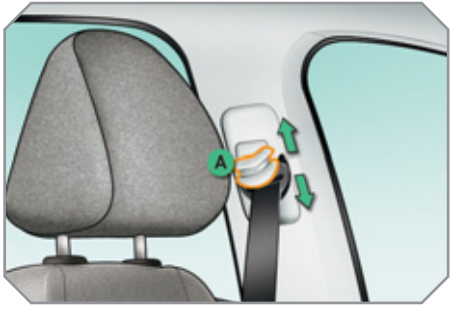


- Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Height adjustment



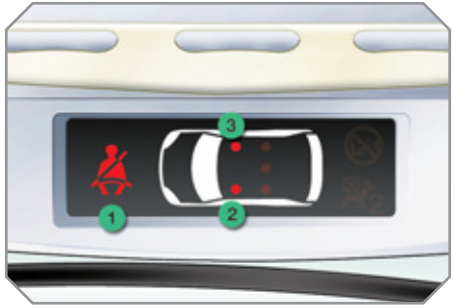
- To lower the attachment point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it downwards.
- To raise the attachment point, slide the control **A** upwards.

Seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamp

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on, either on the instrument panel or on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

Seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamps display



1. Front seat belts not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp.
2. Driver's seat belt not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp.
3. Front passenger's seat belt not fastened/unfastened or unfastened warning lamp*.

The corresponding warning lamp **2** or **3** comes on in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display if the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

Rear seat belts

The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point seat belt with pretensioner and for the side seats a force limiter.

Fastening

- Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- On the outer seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.

* According to version and/or country.



2nd row rear seat belts

The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point seat belt, with force limiter and, for the outer seats, a pretensioner.

Fastening

- Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- On the outer seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.

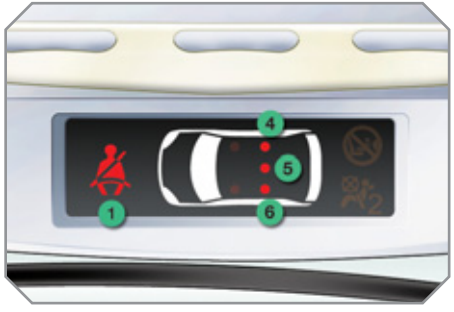
Seat belt unfastened warning lamp



This warning lamp comes on, either on the instrument panel or on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display



1. Rear seat belts unfastened warning lamp.
4. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
6. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or when the vehicle is moving at less than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **4**, **5** and **6** come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.

When the vehicle is moving at more than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamp **4**, **5** or **6** comes on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.

2nd row rear centre seat belt

The seat belt for the rear centre seat of the 2nd row is located at the rear left of the roof.

Installation

- Pull the strap and insert the tongue **A** in the left-hand buckle.
- Insert the tongue **B** in the right-hand buckle.
- Check the fastening of each buckle by pulling the strap.



Removal and storing

- Press the red button on the buckle **B**, then on the buckle **A**.
- Guide the strap as it reels in and bring the tongue **B**, then **A** onto the magnet of the attachment point on the roof.

If the two outer seats of the 2nd row are moved inwards, always use the outer rear seat belts.

3rd row rear seat belts

The seat belts for the rear seats of the 3rd row are located at the corner of the corresponding boot pillar and roof.

Installation

- Pull the strap and insert the tongue **C** in the buckle, on the boot side trim side.
- Insert the tongue **D** in the opposite buckle.
- Check the fastening of each buckle by pulling the strap.



Removal and storing

- Press the red button on the buckle **D**, then on the buckle **C**.
- Guide the strap as it reels in and bring the tongue **D**, then **C** onto the magnet of the attachment point on the corresponding boot pillar.

The 3rd row of seats (SW with individual rear seats) is not fitted with seat belt unfastened warning lamps.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not invert the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stored automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling firmly on the strap and releasing it so that it re-winds slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, all repairs and checks must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer who guarantees that the work is carried out correctly.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer and particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pre-tensioning device may be triggered before and independently of the airbags. Triggering of the pre-tensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer.

AIRBAGS

System designed to maximise the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. It supplements the action of the force-limiting seat belts (with the exception of the rear centre passenger).

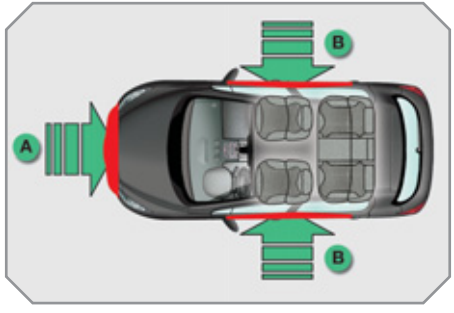
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are triggered instantly and protect the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags will not be triggered; the seat belt alone is sufficient to provide optimum protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be triggered again.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Triggering of the airbag(s) is accompanied by a slight emission of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

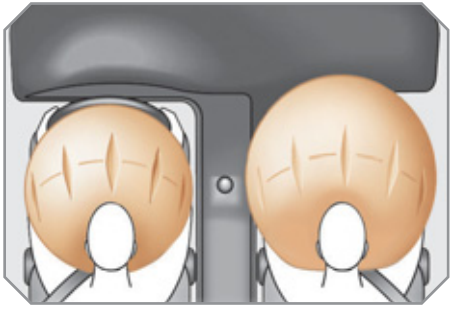
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of the detonation may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and chest.

The driver's airbag is incorporated in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is incorporated in the dashboard above the glove box.



Activation

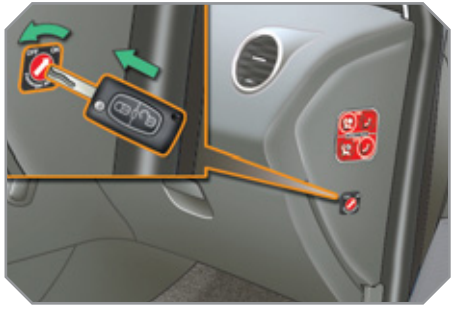
The airbags are triggered simultaneously, unless the passenger's front airbag is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the front occupant of the vehicle and the dashboard to cushion his forward movement.

Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated:

- **with the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch,
- turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- then, remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



According to version, this warning lamp comes on either on the instrument panel or on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

To assure the safety of your child, it is imperative that the passenger's front airbag is deactivated when you install a "rear facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were triggered.

Reactivation

When you remove the child seat, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

With the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display for approximately one minute, if the passenger's front airbag is activated.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message on the multifunction screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be triggered in the event of a serious impact.

* According to country.

If this warning lamp flashes, contact a PEUGEOT dealer. The passenger's front airbag may no longer be triggered in the event of a serious impact.

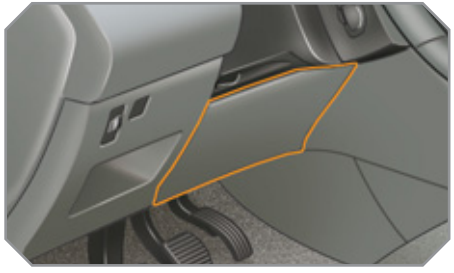
If at least one of the two airbag warning lamps come on continuously, do not install a child seat on the front passenger seat.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Knee airbag*

System which protects the driver's knees in the event of a serious front impact.

This airbag is incorporated in the dashboard below the steering column.



Activation

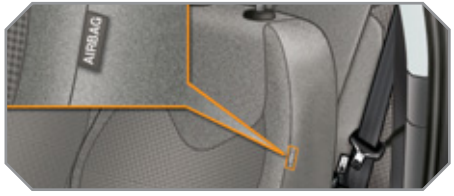
It is deployed at the same time as the front airbags.

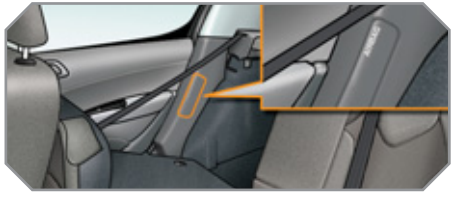
Lateral airbags

System which protects the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest.

Each lateral airbag is incorporated:

- in the front, in the seat back frame, on the door side,
- in the rear, in the side trim (except SW models).



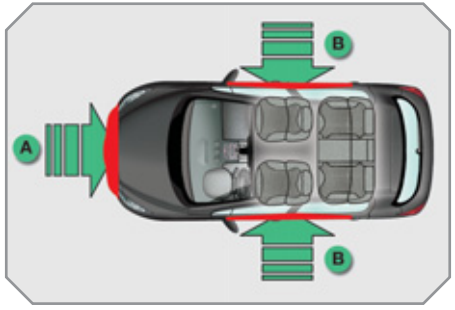


Activation

The lateral airbags are triggered unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

System which protects the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Activation

The curtain airbag is triggered at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be triggered in the event of a serious impact.

In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbag may not be triggered.

In the event of a rear or front collision, the airbag is not triggered.

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system is strictly forbidden unless it is carried out by qualified personnel of the PEUGEOT dealer network.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is triggered cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

If possible, do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Knee airbag*

Do not sit with your knees any nearer to the steering wheel than necessary.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats. These will not hinder inflation of the lateral airbags. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is triggered.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

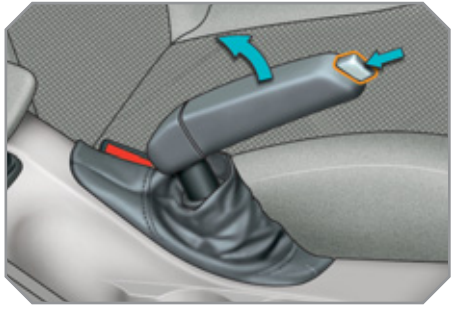
Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is triggered.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

* According to country.

PARKING BRAKE



Applying

☞ Pull the parking brake lever fully up to immobilise your vehicle.

Releasing

☞ Pull the parking brake lever gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been properly released.

When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the pavement, apply the parking brake and engage a gear.

6-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX

Engaging reverse gear

☞ Raise the ring under the knob and push the gear lever to the left then forwards.



Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR*

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change up on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox.

Operation

The system intervenes only when driving economically.

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear recommended should not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal moderately.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear, if appropriate.



The information appears in the form of an arrow on the instrument panel display.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, this arrow may be accompanied by the recommended gear.

In the case of driving which makes particular demands on the performance of the engine (firm pressure on the accelerator pedal, for example, when overtaking...), the system will not recommend a gear change.

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

* According to engine.

6-SPEED ELECTRONIC GEAR CONTROL GEARBOX

Six-speed electronic gear control gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

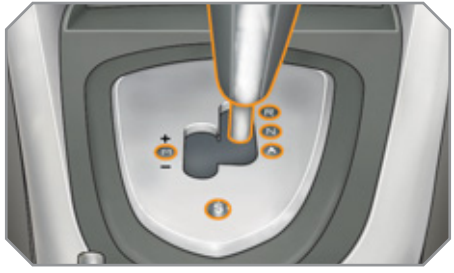
Three driving modes are offered:

- **automatic** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox,
- **sequential** mode for manual changing of the gears by the driver,
- **auto sequential** mode to overtake, for example, remaining in automatic mode while using the functions of the sequential mode.

A **Sport** function is available in automatic or sequential mode for a more dynamic style of driving.

Having this gearbox provides you with an additional function: **hill start assist.**

Gear lever



R. Reverse.

☞ With your foot on the brake, move the lever upwards to select this position.

N. Neutral.

☞ With your foot on the brake, select this position to start.

A. Automatic mode.

☞ Move the lever downwards to select this mode.

M +/-. Sequential mode with manual changing of the gears.

☞ Move the lever downwards then to the left to select this mode, then:

- push the lever forwards to change up a gear,
- or pull the lever rearwards to change down a gear.

S. Sport function.

☞ Press this button to activate or deactivate this function.

Steering mounted controls



+. Change up control paddle to the right of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"+"** steering wheel control paddle to change up a gear.

-. Change down control paddle to the left of the steering wheel.

☞ Press the back of the **"-"** steering wheel control paddle to change down a gear.

The steering wheel control paddles do not permit the selection of neutral or engaging or disengaging reverse gear.

Displays on the instrument panel



Gear lever positions

N. Neutral

R. Reverse

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6. Gears in sequential mode

AUTO. This comes on when the automatic mode is selected. It switches off on changing to sequential mode.

S. Sport (Sport function)

Foot on brake



☞ Press the brake pedal when this warning lamp flashes (e.g.: when starting the engine).

An audible signal is heard when reverse gear is engaged.

Moving off

☞ Select position **N**.

☞ Press the brake pedal down fully.

☞ Start the engine.



N appears on the instrument panel screen.

☞ Select first gear (position **M** or **A**) or reverse (position **R**).

☞ Release the parking brake.

☞ Take your foot off the brake pedal, then accelerate.



AUTO and **1** or **R** appear on the instrument panel screen.

N flashes on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, if the gear lever is not in position **N** on starting.

Foot on brake flashes on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, if the brake pedal is not pressed on starting.

Hill start assist

This is an additional function associated with this gearbox. It allows temporary immobilisation of your vehicle.

It maintains the pressure of the brakes briefly, long enough for you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

It comes into operation if the vehicle is immobilised by pressing the brake pedal and depending on the gradient:

- on an ascending gradient, with the vehicle stationary, gear lever in position **A** or **M**, the vehicle is held briefly when the brake pedal is released,
- on a descending gradient, with the vehicle stationary, gear lever in position **R**, the vehicle is held briefly when the brake pedal is released.

Do not hold the vehicle using the accelerator.

Never leave the vehicle during a hill start assist phase.

Sequential mode

☞ When the vehicle has moved off, select position **M** to change to sequential mode.



AUTO disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel screen.

The gear change requests are only carried out if the engine speed permits.

It is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.

When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to permit reacceleration of the vehicle in the correct gear.

At very low speed, if reverse gear is requested, this will only be taken into account when the vehicle is immobilised. The **Foot on brake** warning lamp may flash on the instrument panel to prompt you to brake.

At high speed, if reverse gear is requested, the **N** indicator lamp will flash and the gearbox will change to neutral automatically. To engage a gear again, return the lever to position **A** or **M**.

On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the gear lever or the steering mounted controls.

Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Only engage reverse gear **R** when the vehicle is immobilised with the brake pedal pressed.

Automatic mode

☞ Following use of the sequential mode, select position **A** to return to the automatic mode.



AUTO and the gear engaged appear on the instrument panel screen.

The gearbox is then operating in auto-active mode, without any action on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear in relation to the following parameters:

- style of driving,
- profile of the road.

For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

"Auto sequential mode"

This mode enables you to overtake, for example, remaining in automatic mode while using the functions of the sequential mode.

☞ Operate steering wheel control paddle **+** or **-**.

The gearbox engages the gear requested if the engine speed permits. **AUTO** is still displayed on the instrument panel.

After a few moments without any action on the controls, the gearbox resumes automatic control of the gears.

Sport function

☞ Following selection of the sequential mode or automatic mode, press button **S** to activate the Sport function which offers you a more dynamic style of driving.



S appears next to the gear engaged on the instrument panel screen.

☞ Press button **S** again to deactivate the function.

S is then cleared from the instrument panel screen.

The Sport function is deactivated each time the ignition is switched off.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can choose to:

- move to position **N** to engage neutral,
- leave the gear engaged; in this case, it will not be possible to move the vehicle.

In both cases, it is essential that you apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, it is essential to place the gear lever in neutral **N**.

Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, check that the gear lever is in neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied.

Operating fault

PRND

With the ignition on, if this warning lamp comes on and **AUTO** flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, this indicates a malfunction of the gearbox.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

This warning lamp may also come on if a door is opened.

ESP

With the ignition on, if the warning lamp above and this warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, this indicates a malfunction of the hill start assist system.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

It is essential to press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

When parking, is it essential to apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, whatever the circumstances.

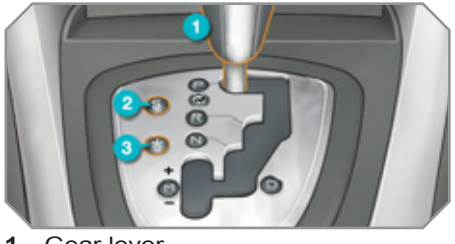
"PORSCHE TIPTRONIC SYSTEM" AUTOMATIC GEARBOX

Four or six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Four driving modes are provided:

- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
- **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving,
- **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selection gate



1. Gear lever.
2. Button "**S**" **(sport)**.
3. Button "❄" **(snow)**.

Gear lever



P. Park.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.
- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

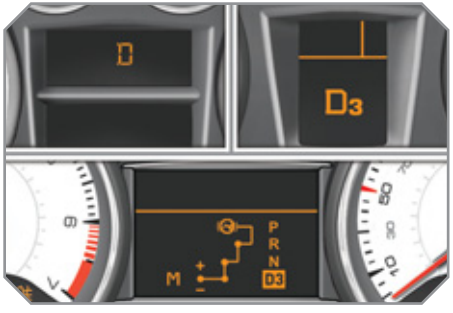
M.+/- Manual operation with sequential changing of the four or six gears.

☞ Push forwards to change up through the gears.

or

☞ Pull rearwards to change down through the gears.

Displays on the instrument panel



When you move the lever in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator lamp is displayed on the instrument panel.

P. Park
R. Reverse
N. Neutral
D. Drive (Automatic driving)
S. Sport programme
❄. **Snow** programme
1 to 4. Gear engaged during
1 to 6. manual operation
-. Invalid value during manual operation

Foot on brake

☞ When this warning lamp flashes, press the brake pedal to allow disengagement of the gear lever from the **P** position.

Moving off

- Apply the parking brake.
- Select position **P** or **N**.
- Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, a loud audible signal is heard, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

- With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
- Release the parking brake.
- Select position **R**, **D** or **M**,
- Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

If position **N** is engaged inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then engage position **D** to accelerate.

When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.

When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.

When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

- Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the four or six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the lever, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

- Press button **"S"**, after starting the engine.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears on the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

- Press button "❄", after starting the engine.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme improves starting and drive when traction is poor.



❄ appears on the instrument panel.

Return to automatic operation

- At any time, press the button selected again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the four or six gears.
- ☞ Push the lever towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the lever towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.

In the event of under-revving or over-revving, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.

When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

If the lever is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal is heard and a message appears.

☞ Return the lever to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Operating fault



When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, indicates a gearbox malfunction.

In this case, the gearbox switches to emergency mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed a speed of 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

This warning lamp may also come on if a door is opened.

There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the lever from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

To limit fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam...), place the gear lever in position **N** and apply the parking brake.

SPEED LIMITER

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

When the programmed speed limit is reached, pressing the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: it requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator firmly.

To return to the programmed speed, simply slow down to a speed below the programmed speed.

The programmed speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to respect speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Steering mounted controls



The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Speed limiter mode selection dial
2. Value decrease button
3. Value increase button
4. Speed limiter on/off button

Displays on the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together on the instrument panel screen.

5. Speed limiter on/off indication
6. Speed limiter mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value



Programming

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF).

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.



☞ Set the speed value by pressing button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 55 mph (90 km/h)).



You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button **4**.



☞ Switch the speed limiter off by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF).



☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4** again.

Exceeding the programmed speed

Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.



Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.

Return to normal driving

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the speed limiter mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.

Operating fault

In the event of a speed limiter malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.



On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

CRUISE CONTROL

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) and the engaging:

- of fourth gear on the manual gearbox,
- of second gear on the electronic gear control gearbox or automatic gearbox, in sequential driving mode,
- of position **A** on the electronic gear control gearbox or **D** on the automatic gearbox.

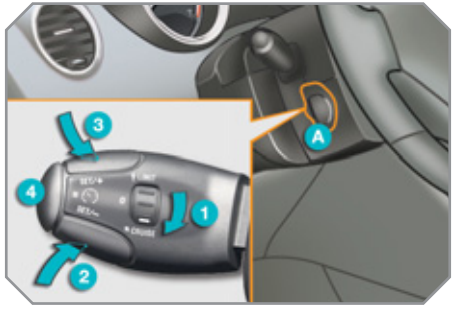
The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the ESP system for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

Steering mounted controls



The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Cruise control mode selection dial
2. Speed programming/programmed value decrease button
3. Speed programming/programmed value increase button
4. Cruise control off/resume button

The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

Displays on the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together on the instrument panel display.

5. Cruise control off/resume indication
6. Cruise control mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value



Programming

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF).

☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 70 mph (110 km/h)).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

☞ Switch off the cruise control by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF).

☞ Switch the cruise control back on by pressing button **4** again.

Exceeding the programmed speed

Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed on the display.

Return to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the speed.

Return to normal driving

☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.











Operating fault

In the event of a cruise control malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.



When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.

On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

PARKING SENSORS

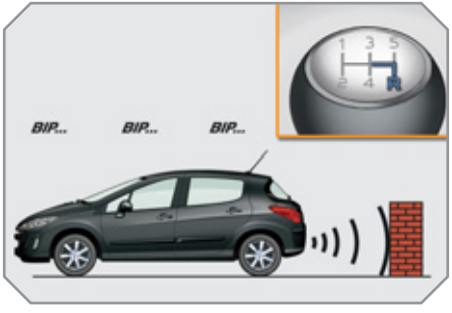
This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.

Certain types of obstacle (stake, roadworks cone, etc.) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre due to the presence of blind spots.



This function cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

Rear parking sensors



The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear. This is accompanied by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you exit reverse gear.

Audible assistance

The proximity information is given by a discontinuous audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

Visual assistance





This supplements the audible signal by displaying segments on the multifunction screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is near, the symbol "Danger" is also displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Deactivation/Activation of the front and rear parking sensors



The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The indicator lamp on the button comes on.

Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp on the button switches off.

Deactivation/Activation of the rear parking sensors



The function is deactivated or activated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

The status of the function is stored when the ignition is switched off.

For further details about the access to the parking sensors menu, refer to the vehicle configuration section corresponding to your multifunction screen.

The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by PEUGEOT).

Operating fault

If an operating fault occurs, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short bleep).

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long bleep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

When the vehicle is moving at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h), certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.



PARTNERS IN PERFORMANCE AND PROTECTION OF THE ENVIRONMENT

Innovation at the service of performance

The TOTAL Research and Development teams develop lubricants for PEUGEOT which satisfy the requirements of the latest technical innovations incorporated in PEUGEOT vehicles.

This ensures that you obtain the best performance for your engine.

Optimum protection for your engine

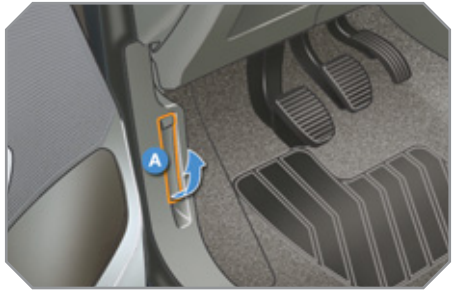
By maintaining your PEUGEOT vehicle using TOTAL lubricants, you contribute to increasing the longevity and performance of your engine while protecting the environment.

TOTAL PEUGEOT

BONNET

Opening

- Open the front left door.
- Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door frame.



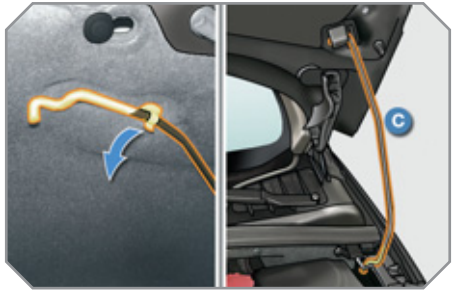
The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.

- Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

- Unclip the stay **C** from its housing.
- Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.



Closing

- Take the stay out of the support notch.
- Clip the stay in its housing.
- Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL (DIESEL)

If your vehicle is fitted with an HDI engine, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel; refer to the engine compartment view on the "Diesel engine" page.

If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying.

Operate the priming pump again, then the starter motor.

1.6 litre Turbo HDI engine

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until it hardens (it may be hard at the first press).
- Operate the starter until the engine starts.
- Close the bonnet.

2 litre Turbo HDI engine

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- Unclip the style cover for access to the priming pump.
- Slacken the bleed screw.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until fuel appears in the transparent pipe with the green connector.
- Retighten the bleed screw.
- Operate the starter until the engine starts.
- Put the style cover back in position and clip it in place.
- Close the bonnet.



PETROL ENGINES

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids and for replacing certain components.

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery/Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.



DIESEL ENGINES

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery/Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump*.
11. Bleed screw*.

* According to engine.

CHECKING LEVELS

Check all of these levels regularly and top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

When working under the bonnet, take care, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns).

Oil level

The reading will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 15 minutes.

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator on the instrument panel, or using the dipstick.

Engine oil change

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for details of the interval for this operation.

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, the use of additives in the engine oil is prohibited.

Oil specification

The oil must correspond to your engine and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Brake fluid level

The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and fulfil the DOT4 standards.

Power steering fluid level

The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. Unscrew the cap, with the engine cold, to check the level.

Coolant level

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan. This can operate with the ignition off.

On vehicles which are fitted with a particle emission filter, the fan may operate after the vehicle has been switched off, even if the engine is cold.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

Changing the coolant

The coolant does not have to be changed.

Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid

In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the minimum level of this fluid is indicated by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Top up the level when you stop the vehicle.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with water.

Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle emission filter)

A low additive level is indicated by lighting of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message on the multifunction screen.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a PEUGEOT dealer without delay.

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer (France) or an authorised waste disposal site.

CHECKS

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Warranty and Maintenance and Record and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "Practical information" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance and Record for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary** (refer to the "Engines" section).

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance and Record for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle emission filter (Diesel)

It is imperative that the maintenance of the particle emission filter is carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance and Record for the details of the level checking interval for this component.

6-speed electronic gear control gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance and Record for details of the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance and Record for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information relating to checking the brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

Parking brake



If a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specifications.

In order to optimise the operation of units as important as the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.

To avoid damaging the electrical units, the use of a high pressure washer in the engine compartment is strictly **prohibited**.

TEMPORARY PUNCTURE REPAIR KIT

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

Access to the kit



The kit is stowed in the boot under the floor. It is installed in the tool box, located under the storage box.

Description of the kit





A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
B. On **"I"**/off **"O"** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bar or p.s.i.).
E. Compartment housing:
- a cable with adaptor for 12 V socket,
- various inflation adaptors for accessories, such as balls, bicycle tyres...

F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair.
H. Black pipe for inflation.
I. Speed limit sticker.

The speed limit sticker **I** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

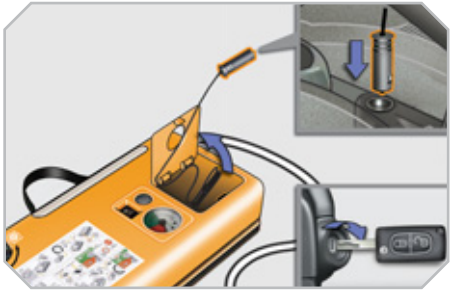
1. Sealing



- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the selector **A** to the "SEALANT" position.
- Check that the switch **B** is in position **"O"**.



- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



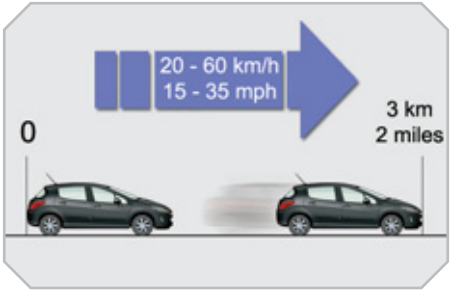
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.

Take care, this product is harmful (e.g. ethylene-glycol, colophony...) if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

Keep it out of reach of children.





- Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position **"I"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.

  The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).

- Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe.

  Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.

- Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph [20 and 60 km/h]), to plug the puncture.

- Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer for assistance.

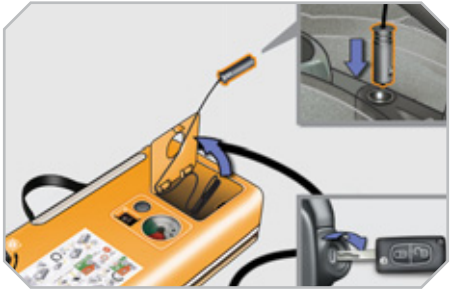
Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer.

2. Inflation



- Turn the selector **A** to the "AIR" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



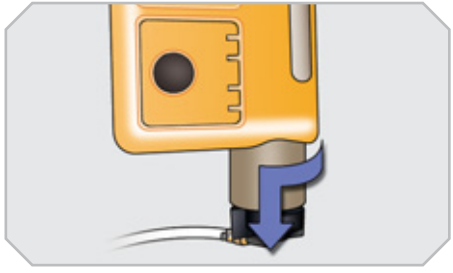
- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture).

  A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a PEUGEOT dealer for assistance.
- Remove and stow the kit.
- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

- Visit a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

  You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will inform you whether the tyre can be repaired or must be replaced.

Removing the cartridge



- Stow the black pipe.
- Detach the angled base from the white pipe.
- Support the compressor vertically.
- Unscrew the cartridge from the bottom.

Beware of discharges of fluid.

The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge

The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a PEUGEOT dealer.

Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from PEUGEOT dealers.

Checking tyre pressures/ inflating accessories

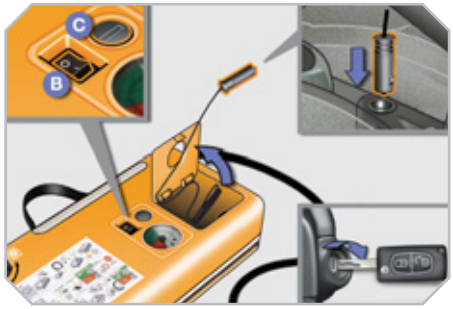
You can also use the compressor, without injecting any product, to:

- check or adjust the pressure of your tyres,
- inflate other accessories.



- Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel or accessory.

  If necessary, fit one of the adaptors supplied with the kit first.



- Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label or the accessory's pressure label.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

TEMPORARY PUNCTURE REPAIR KIT

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a bottle of sealant which permits **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.



The kit is stowed in the boot storage tray.

This repair kit is available from PEUGEOT dealers.

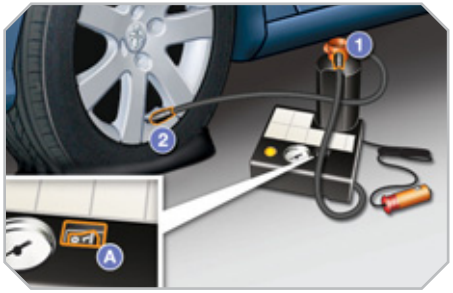
It is designed to repair holes of a maximum diameter of 6 mm, only where located on the tyre tread or shoulder. Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.

Using the kit

- Switch off the ignition.
- Tick the wheel to be repaired on the speed limitation sticker enclosed then affix the sticker to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.
- Clip the bottle **1** on the compressor **2**.



- Check that the switch **A** is tilted to position **"0"**.
- Connect the pipe of the bottle **1** to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.
- Unwind the pipe of the compressor **2** fully, then connect it to the bottle.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

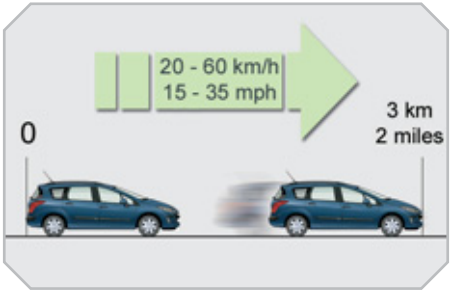


- Switch on the compressor by tilting the switch **A** to position **"1"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.



If this pressure has not been reached after approximately five to ten minutes, the tyre cannot be repaired; contact a PEUGEOT dealer to have your vehicle repaired.

- Remove the compressor and store the bottle in the plastic bag, supplied in the kit, to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid.
- Drive immediately for approximately two miles (three kilometres), at reduced speed (between 10 and 35 mph [20 and 60 km/h]), to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair and the pressure.



- Connect the compressor pipe directly to the valve of the repaired wheel.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket again.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **A** in position **"1"**; to deflate: switch **A** in position **"0"** and press button **B**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the door aperture on the driver's side), then remember to check that the leak is plugged correctly (no further loss of pressure after several miles [kilometres]).
- Remove the compressor, then store the whole kit.



- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) for no more than approximately 125 miles (200 km).

- Visit a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible to have the tyre repaired or replaced by a technician.

Take care, the bottle of fluid contains ethylene-glycol. This product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep it out of reach of children.

The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the base of the bottle.

The bottle is designed for a single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.

Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant product, available from PEUGEOT dealers.

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre underinflation detection, the tyre underinflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer.

CHANGING A WHEEL

Procedure for changing a faulty wheel for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- open the boot,
- raise the floor,
- secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear parcel shelf support,
- unclip and remove the box containing the tools.

List of tools



All of these tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
3. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special security bolts.

Wheel with trim

When removing the wheel, detach the trim first using the wheelbrace **1** pulling at the valve passage hole.

When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.

According to country, the spare wheel may be steel or alloy.

For access to it, refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools" on the previous page.

Taking out the wheel

- Unscrew the yellow central bolt.
- Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- Take the wheel out of the boot.



Putting the wheel back in place

- Put the wheel back in its housing.
- Unscrew the yellow central bolt by a few turns then put it in place in the centre of the wheel.
- Tighten fully until the central bolt clicks to retain the wheel correctly.



- Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.



Fitting a steel spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, it is normal to notice, when tightening the bolts on fitting, that the washers do not come into contact with the steel spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

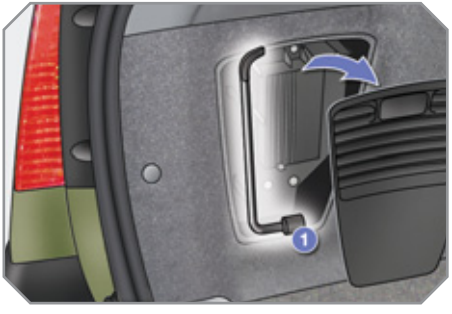
Tyre under-inflation detection

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a PEUGEOT dealer.

CHANGING A WHEEL

Procedure for changing a faulty wheel for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

Access to the tools



The wheelbrace **1** is stowed in the boot left-hand side trim; for access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ open the access flap in the left-hand side trim,
- ☞ unclip the wheelbrace from its support,

The tools **2** and **3** are stowed in a box fitted under the spare wheel; the assembly is installed underneath the rear of the vehicle (refer to the section "Access to the spare wheel" on the following page for instructions on how to get them out).

List of tools



All of these tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
3. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box or in the tool box under the sapre wheel).
   For adaptating the wheelbrace to the special security bolts.

Wheel with trim

When removing the wheel, detach the trim first using the wheelbrace **1** pulling at the valve passage hole.

When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is supported by a winch system underneath the rear of the vehicle.

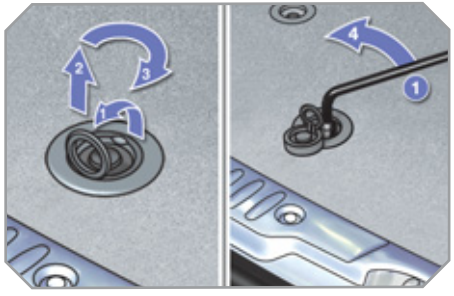
According to country, the spare wheel may be steel, alloy or of the "space-saver" type.

Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel

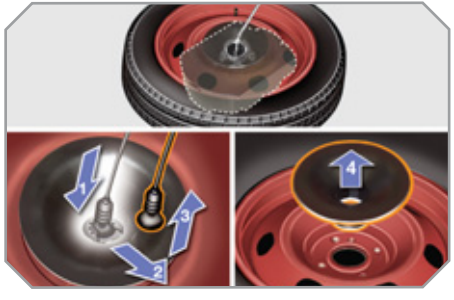
If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, it is normal to notice, when tightening the bolts on fitting, that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

Taking out the wheel

- Lift up the cover eyelet, pull the cover upwards, then pivot it to open the flap; these actions release the winch and give access to its control nut.
- Unscrew this nut fully, using the wheelbrace **1**, to unwind the winch cable.

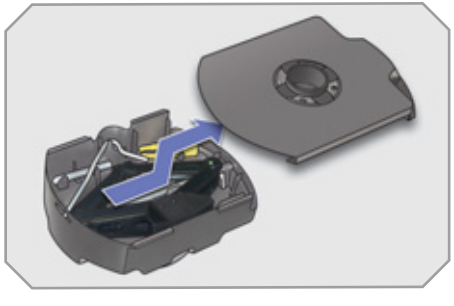


- Once the wheel/box is on the ground, disengage the assembly from the rear of the vehicle.
- Detach the hook mechanism to release the wheel/box assembly, as shown in the illustration.
- Take out the black plastic centring cone.



Access to the set of tools

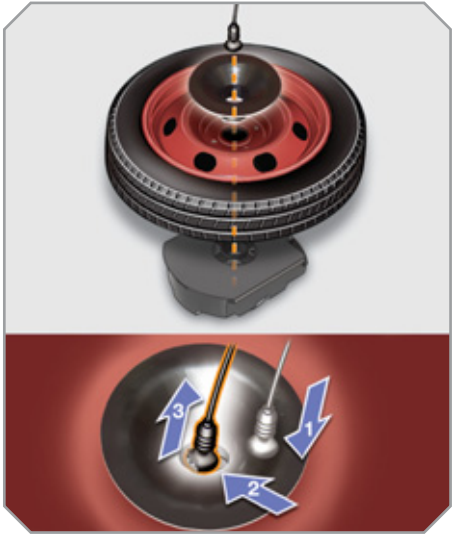
- Lift up the wheel to release the set of tools.
- To open the storage box, slide the cover until half open, then pull it off.





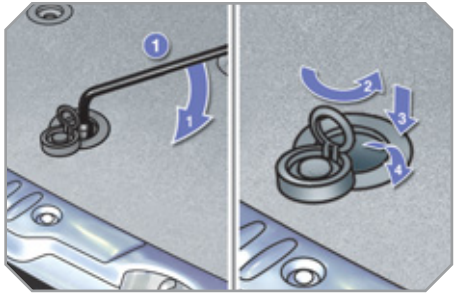
Putting the wheel back in place

- Store tools **2** and **3** in the box and close the cover.
- Position the box on the ground.
- Place the spare wheel on the box.
- Fit the black plastic centring cone in the centre of the wheel (on steel or "space-saver" type wheels only).
- Pass the hooking device through the cone and the wheel to secure it to the box cover.
- Raise the wheel/box assembly underneath the rear of the vehicle by tightening the winch control nut using the wheelbrace **1**.



If you purchase a wheel of standard size to replace the "space-saver" type spare wheel, the spacer, located underneath the vehicle, must be removed. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

- Fully tighten the nut.
- Close the flap with the eyelet and cover to secure the winch.
- Check that the wheel is located squarely against the floor.
  If not, repeat the operation.



Tyre under-inflation detection

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Removing the wheel



Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery ground.

Apply the parking brake, switch off the ignition and engage first gear* to lock the wheels.

If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

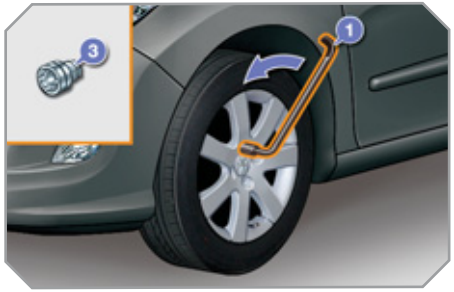
It is imperative that you ensure that the occupants get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

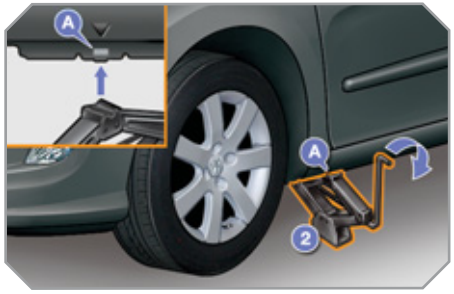
* position **R** for the electronic gear control gearbox; **P** for the automatic gearbox.

List of operations

- Fit the security socket **3** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt.
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- Place the jack **2** in contact with one of the two front **A** or rear **B** locations provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.
- Extend the jack **2** until its base plate is in contact with the ground. Ensure that the centreline of the jack base plate is directly below the location **A** or **B** used.



- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.
- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.



Fitting the wheel



List of operations

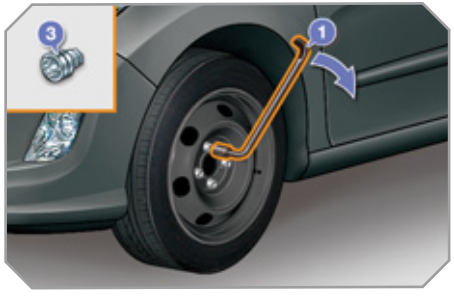
- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **3**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **2** and detach it.



- Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **3**.
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
- Store the tools in the box.



After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.

When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer without delay.

Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

CHANGING A BULB

Procedure for replacing a faulty bulb with a new bulb without the use of tools.

The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

- **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- use a sponge and soapy water,
- when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not direct at the lamps or their outlines for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

- Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use lint-free cloths.

Changing a halogen bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for a few minutes (risk of serious burns).

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs in order not to damage the headlamp.

Front lamps

Model with halogen headlamps



1. **Direction indicators (PY 21W amber).**
2. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7 - 55W).**
3. **Main beam headlamps (H1 - 55W).**
4. **Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps (P21/5W).**
5. **Foglamps (H8 - 35W).**

Model with xenon and directional headlamps

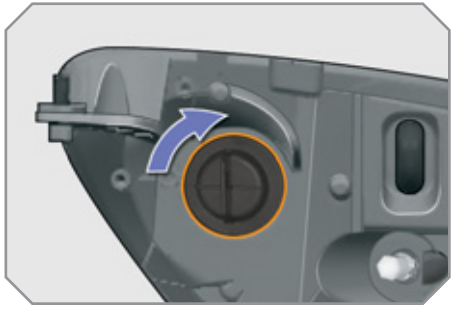


1. **Direction indicators (PY 21W SV silver).**
2. **Directional dipped/main beam headlamps (D1S-35W).**
3. **Additional main beam headlamps (H1-55W).**
4. **Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps (P21/5W).**
5. **Foglamps (H8-35W).**

Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs (D1S-35W) must be replaced by a PEUGEOT dealer.

Changing direction indicator bulbs



- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

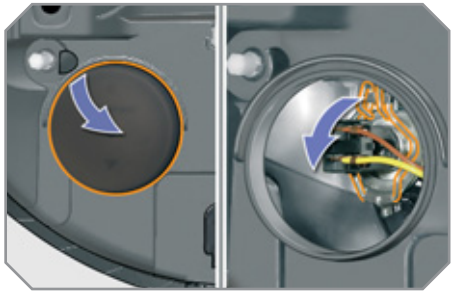
Amber or silver coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.

When refitting, close the protective cover carefully to assure the sealing of the headlamp.

Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs

- Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Spread the springs to release the bulb.
- Extract the bulb and change it.

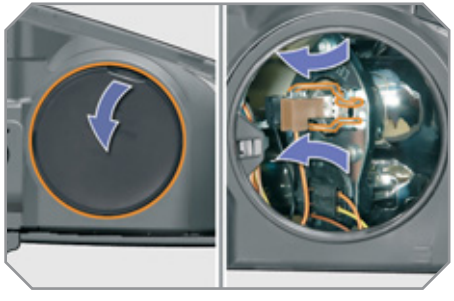
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Changing main beam headlamp bulbs

- Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Compress the springs to release the bulb.
- Remove the bulb and change it

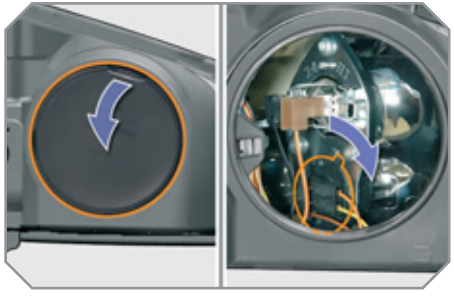
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Changing daytime running lamp/ sidelamp bulbs

- Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Changing integrated direction indicator side repeaters



- ☞ Insert a screwdriver towards the centre of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the mirror.
- ☞ Tilt the screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
- ☞ Disconnect the repeater connector.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

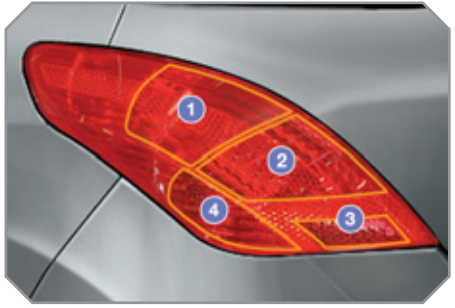
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer to obtain replacement repeaters.

Changing foglamp bulbs



To replace these bulbs consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

Rear lamps



1. **Brake lamps/sidelamps (P21/5W).**
2. **Sidelamps (P21/5W).**
3. **Foglamp, offside (P21W).**
   Reversing lamp, nearside (P21W).
4. **Direction indicators (P21W).**

Changing bulbs

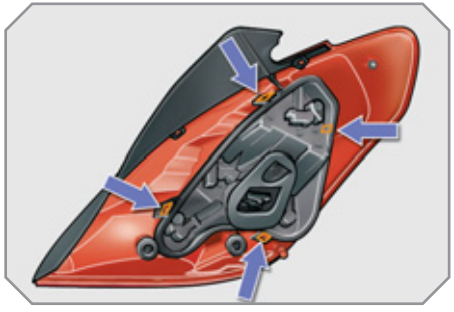
These five bulbs are changed from outside the boot:

- on the right-hand side; remove the access flap,
- on the left-hand side; turn the fixing bolt a quarter of a turn and remove the storage box cover,
- unclip the storage box,
- remove the two lamp fixing nuts,
- extract the lamp carefully from the outside,
- disconnect the lamp connector,



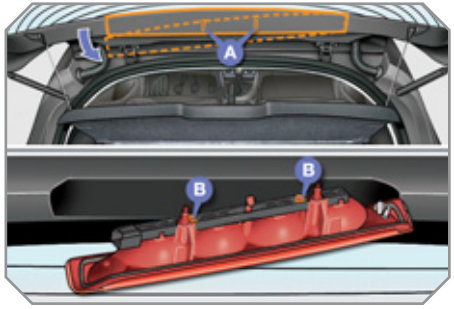
- press the four tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



If the vehicle is fitted with the JBL audio system, on the right-hand side, first remove the three fixing bolts, then move the box.

Changing third brake lamp bulbs (4 bulbs W5W)

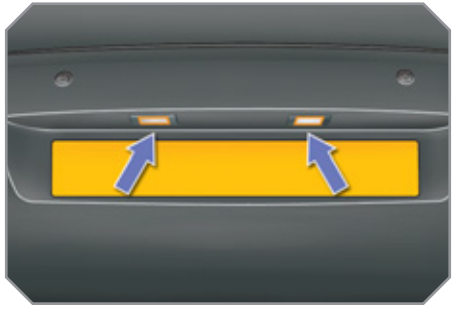


- Unclip the tailgate upper trim from left to right.
- Unscrew the two lamp fixing nuts **A**.
- Unclip the lamp's central pin.
- Extract the lamp from the outside.
- Disconnect the bulb holder connector and the wash-wipe pipe.
- Unclip the bulb holder from the lamp by pressing on the two tabs **B**.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

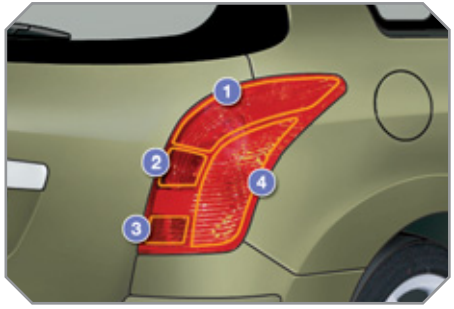
Do not apply force to the lamp when tightening the nuts.

Changing the number plate lamp bulbs (W5W)



- Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the outer holes of the lens.
- Push it outwards to unclip.
- Remove the lens.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

Rear lamps

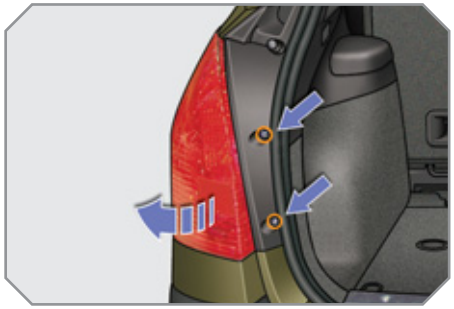


1. **Brake lamps/sidelamps (P21/5W).**
2. **Sidelamps (P21/5W).**
3. **Foglamp, offhand side (P21W)**
   Reversing lamp, nearside (P21W).
4. **Direction indicators (P21W)**

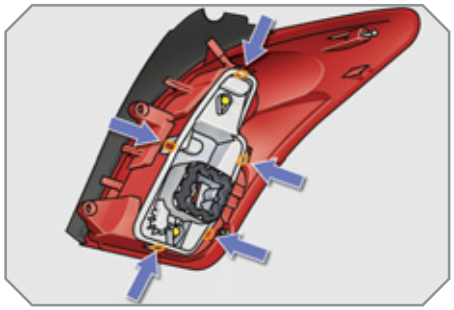
Changing bulbs

These five bulbs are changed from outside the boot:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ unscrew the two lamp fixing bolts,
- ☞ extract the lamp carefully pulling it from the bottom and pivoting it towards the outside,



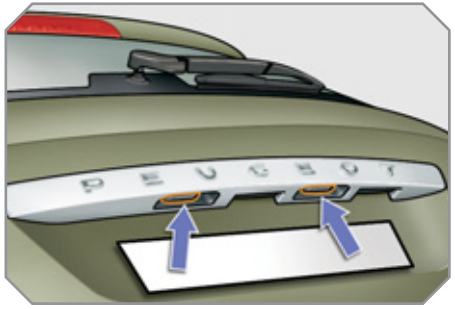
- ☞ unclip the lamp connector,
- ☞ separate the five tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.



To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

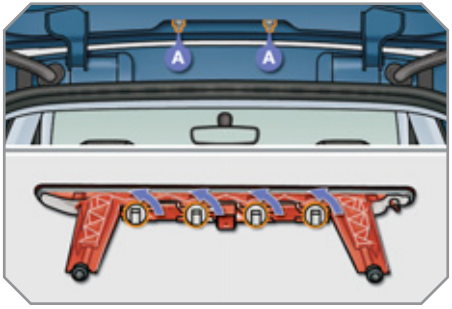
Take care to engage the lamp in its guides keeping it in line with the vehicle.

Changing the number plate lamp bulbs (W5W)



- Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the outer holes of the lens.
- Push it outwards to unclip.
- Remove the lens.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

Changing the third brake lamp (SW - 4 bulbs W5W)

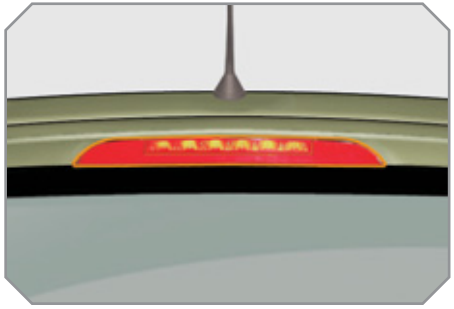


- Remove the two lamp fixing nuts **A**.
- Take out the lamp from the outside.
- Disconnect the connector and the screenwash pipe from the lamp.
- Turn the bulb holder corresponding to the faulty bulb a quarter of a turn.
- Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

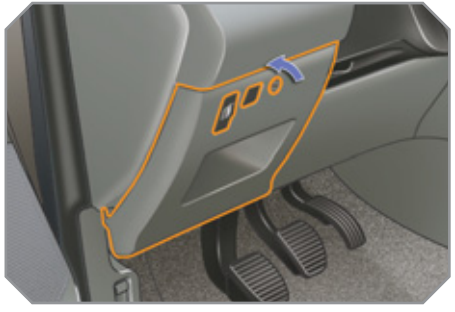
Do not force the lamp when tightening the nuts.

Changing the third brake lamp (SW - diodes)



On the versions with opening rear screen, for the replacement of this type of diode lamp, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

CHANGING A FUSE



Access to the tools

The extraction pliers and the spare fuses are installed on the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.

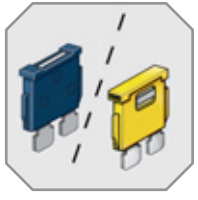
To gain access to them:

- turn the screw a quarter of a turn to the left,
- unclip the cover by pulling at the top right,
- remove the cover completely,
- remove the pliers.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse, the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified.

- Identify the faulty fuse by checking the condition of its filament.



Correct



Incorrect

- Use the special pliers to extract the fuse from its housing.
- Always replace the faulty fuse with a fuse of the same rating.
- Check the correspondence between the number etched on the box, the rating etched on the fuse and the tables below.

Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

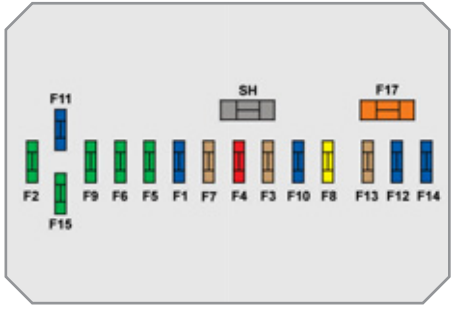
Dashboard fuses

The fusebox is placed in the lower section of the dashboard (left-hand side).



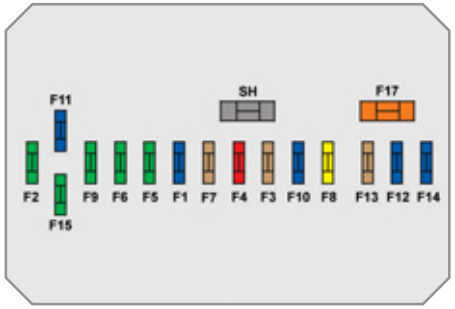
Access to the fuses

☞ refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools".

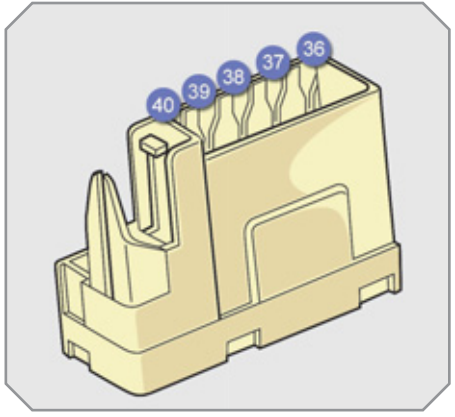


Fuse tables

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	15 A	Rear wiper.
F2	30 A	Locking and deadlocking earth.
F3	5 A	Airbags and pretensioners control unit.
F4	10 A	Clutch pedal and dual-function brake switches, electrochromatic rear view mirror, air conditioning, steering wheel angle sensor, automatic gearbox, switching and protection unit.
F5	30 A	Front one-touch electric windows, folding mirrors supply, panoramic sunroof blind.
F6	30 A	Rear one-touch electric windows, trailer fusebox.
F7	5 A	Front and rear courtesy lamps, map reading lamps, rear reading lamps, sun visor illumination, glove box illumination, torch.
F8	20 A	Audio equipment, audio/telephone, CD changer, multifunction screen, tyre under-inflation detection.
F9	30 A	Front 12 V socket.
F10	15 A	Steering mounted controls, alarm siren, alarm control unit.
F11	15 A	Low current ignition switch.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F12	15 A	Instrument panel, seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, air conditioning, driver's seat memory unit, 2nd row rear seat switches, driving school module.
F13	5 A	Engine fusebox, airbags, electronic gear control gearbox gear lever, trailer fusebox.
F14	15 A	Multifunction screen, amplifier, Bluetooth system, rain/brightness sensor, parking sensors control unit.
F15	30 A	Locking and deadlocking.
F17	40 A	Rear screen and door mirrors demist/defrost.
SH	-	PARC shunt.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
G36	30 A	Driver and passenger heated seats.
G37	5 A	Driving position memory unit, lighting rheostat.
G38	30 A	Driver's seat memory unit.
G39	30 A	Trailer fusebox supply.
G40	30 A	Hi-Fi amplifier.

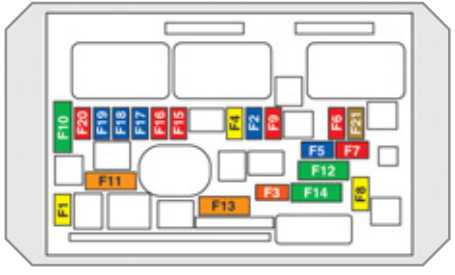
Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery (left-hand side).



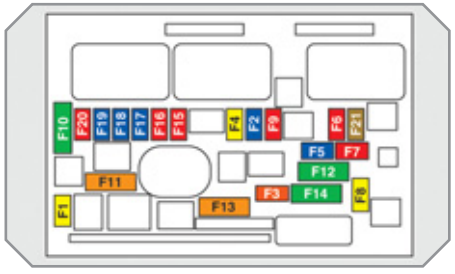
Access to the fuses

- Unclip the cover.
- Change the fuse (see corresponding paragraph).
- When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure sealing of the fusebox.

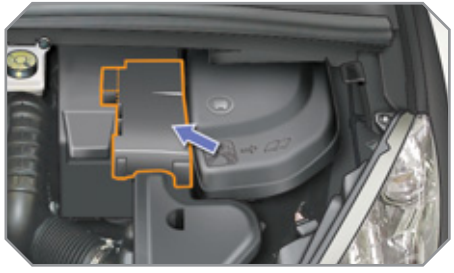


Fuse table

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	20 A	Engine control unit supply, injection pump and EGR electrovalves (2 L HDI), injectors (2 L HDI).
F2	15 A	Horn.
F3	10 A	Front/rear wash-wipe.
F4	20 A	Headlamp wash.
F5	15 A	Canister purge, turbine discharge and Turbo pressure regulation electrovalves (1.6 l THP 16V), oil vapour heater (1.6 l THP 16V), diesel heater (1.6 l HDI).
F6	10 A	Vehicle speed sensor, ABS/ESP control unit.
F7	10 A	Power steering control unit, automatic gearbox, engine coolant level detector.
F8	25 A	Starter motor control.
F9	10 A	Diagnostic socket, directional headlamps, air flow sensor (Diesel), particle emission filter pump (Diesel)
F10	30 A	Engine control unit actuators (petrol: ignition coils, electrovalves, oxygen sensors, injectors, heaters, fuel pump, electronic thermostat) (Diesel: electrovalves, heaters).
F11	40 A	Air conditioning blower.



Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F12	30 A	Windscreen wipers slow/fast speed.
F13	40 A	Built-in systems interface supply (ignition positive).
F14	30 A	Air pump.
F15	10 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F16	10 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F17	15 A	Left-hand dipped headlamp.
F18	15 A	Right-hand dipped headlamp.
F19	15 A	Oil vapour heater (1.4 l 16V and 1,6 l VTi 16V), canister purge electrovalve (1.4 l 16V and 1.6 l VTi 16V), oxygen sensors (petrol), air cooling electrovalves (Diesel).
F20	10 A	Electronic thermostat, variable timing solenoid valves, airflow sensor (1.6 litre THP 200),Turbo pressure regulation electrovalve (Diesel), engine coolant level detector (Diesel).
F21	5 A	Fan assembly relay supply, Valvetronic relay control (1.4 l 16V and 1.6 l VTi 16V), Turbo cooling (1.6 l THP 16V), Valvetronic motor (1.s litre THP 200), air flow sensor (1.6 l HDI).



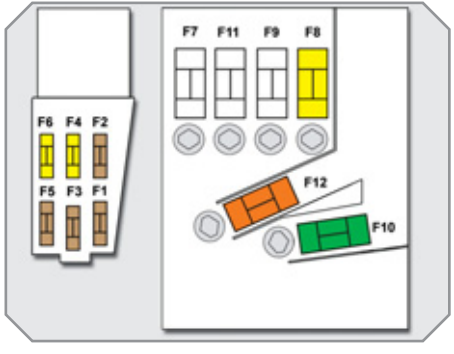


Table of mini and midi-fuses above the battery

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	-	Not used.
F2	5 A	Dual-function brake switch.
F3	5 A	Battery charge unit.
F4	25 A	ABS/ESP electrovalves.
F5	-	Not used.
F6	15 A	Gearbox (electronic gear control or automatic).
F7*	80 A	Power steering electropump assembly.
F8*	60 A	Fan assembly.
F9*	70 A/30 A	Pre-heat unit (Diesel)/Valvetronic electric motor (1.6 l THP 16V).
F10*	40 A	ABS/ESP electropump assembly.
F11*	100 A	Switching and protection unit.
F12*	30 A	Electronic gear control gearbox electropump assembly.

Table of maxi-fuses

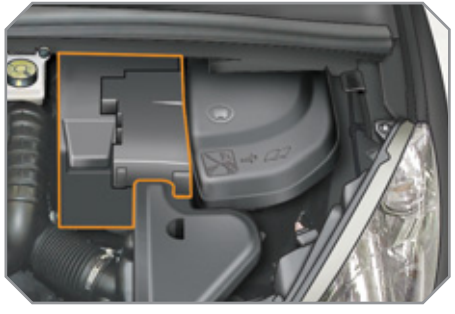
Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
MF1*	-	Not used.
MF2*	30 A	Trailer fusebox.
MF3*	50 A	Dashboard fusebox.
MF4*	80 A	Built-in systems interface.
MF5*	80 A	Built-in systems interface.
MF6*	-	Not used.
MF7*	30 A	Heated seats.
MF8*	20 A	Headlamp wash.

* The midi-fuses and maxi-fuses provide additional protection for the electrical systems. All work on these types of fuse must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer.

BATTERY

Procedure for charging your battery when it is flat or for starting the engine using another battery.

Access to the battery



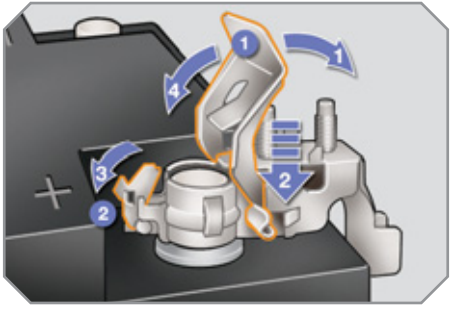
The battery is located under the bonnet.

To gain access to it:

- open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- secure the bonnet stay,
- remove the plastic cover to gain access to the two terminals,
- unclip the fuse box to remove the battery, if necessary.

Disconnecting/Reconnecting the cables

- Raise the locking plate **1** fully.
- Position the open clip of the cable on the positive terminal (+) of the battery.
- Press vertically on the clip **2** to position it correctly against the battery.
- Lock the clip by lowering the plate **1**.

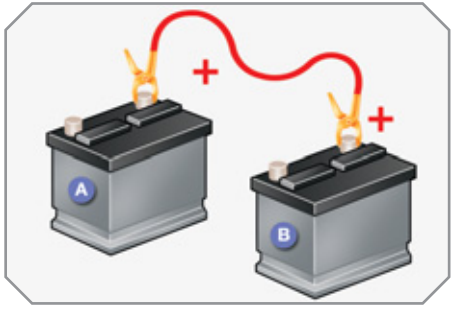


Do not force the plate as locking is impossible if the clip is positioned incorrectly.

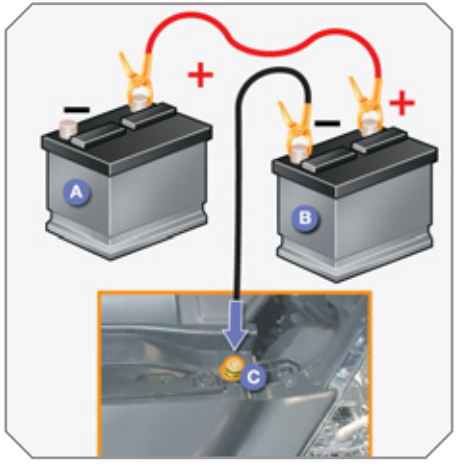
Start the procedure again.

Starting using another battery

- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.



- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B**.
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.



- Operate the starter, let the engine run.
- Wait until the engine returns to idle and disconnect the cables.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

- Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- Reconnect starting with the negative terminal (-).
- Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.

The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.

Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.

Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.

Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if it is fitted with a 6-speed electronic gear control gearbox.

Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.

Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. However, if problems are encountered following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise:

- the remote control key,
- the panoramic sunroof blind,
- the GPS satellite navigation system.

LOAD REDUCTION MODE

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

If the telephone is being used at this time:

- it will be maintained for 10 minutes with the hands-free kit of your Peugeot Connect Sound,
- it will be maintained for 10 minutes with the Peugeot Connect Navigation or the Peugeot Connect Media, then it will transfer to your telephone depending on the telephone model.

ENERGY ECONOMY MODE

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.

Switching to economy mode

Once the thirty minutes are over, a message appears on the multi-function screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

☞ In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the corresponding paragraph).

CHANGING A WIPER BLADE

Before removing a front wiper blade

☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Removing

☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

After fitting a front wiper blade

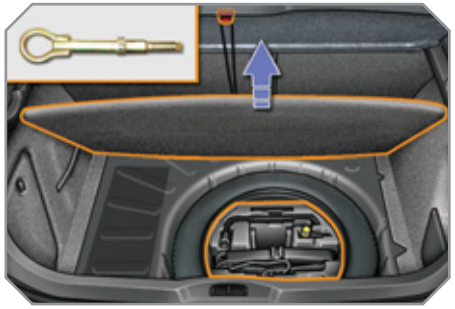
☞ Switch on the ignition.
☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.



TOWING THE VEHICLE

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools

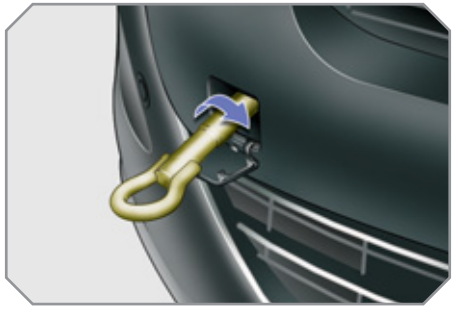


The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to it:

- open the boot,
- raise the floor,
- secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear parcel shelf support,
- remove the polystyrene storage box,
- remove the towing eye from the holder.

Towing your vehicle

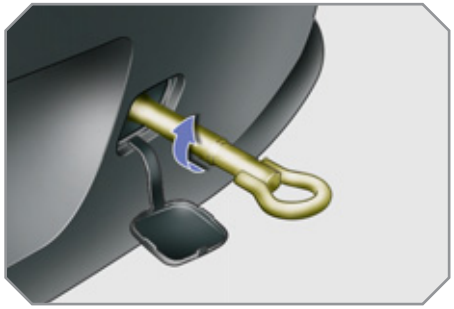


- On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

- Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on the electronic gear control gearbox or automatic gearbox).

  Failure to observe this special condition could result in damage to certain braking components and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

When towing with all four wheels on the ground, always use a towing bar.

When towing with only two wheels on the ground, always use professional lifting equipment.

When towing with the engine off, there is no longer any braking or steering assistance.



TOWING THE VEHICLE

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools

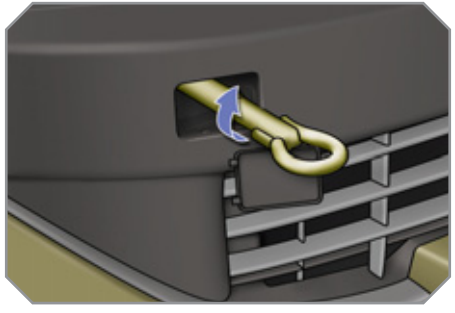


The towing eye is installed in the left-hand side trim of the boot.

To gain access to it:

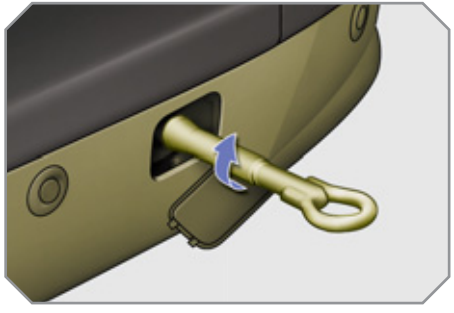
- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ open the access flap in the left-hand side trim,
- ☞ unclip the wheelbrace from its support,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the same support.

Towing your vehicle



- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing it on the left.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing it on the left.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.

- ☞ Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on the automatic gearbox).

  Failure to observe this special condition could result in damage to certain braking components and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

When towing with all four wheels on the ground, always use a towing bar.

When towing with only two wheels on the ground, always use professional lifting equipment.

When towing with the engine off, there is no longer any braking or steering assistance.

TOWING A TRAILER, A CARAVAN, ETC.

Towbar suitable for the attachment of a trailer or caravan with additional lighting and signalling.



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

We recommend the use of genuine PEUGEOT towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a PEUGEOT dealer.

If the trailer is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted using the electrical pre-equipment installed at the rear of the vehicle, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer subjects the towing vehicle to more significant stress and its driver must be particularly careful.

If your vehicle is fitted with the 1.6 THP 200 hp engine, you cannot fit a towbar. The space occupied by the sport exhaust system prevents this.

Driving advice

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towing load must be reduced by 10 % and so on for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical Data" section for details of the weights and towing loads which apply to your vehicle.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towing load on a long slope depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, pay attention to the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.

The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.



FITTING ROOF BARS

When fitting transverse roof bars, use the four quick-fit fixings provided for this purpose:

- ☞ lift the concealing flaps,
- ☞ open the fixing covers on each bar using the spanner,
- ☞ put each fixing in place and lock them on the roof one by one,
- ☞ close the fixing covers on each bar using the spanner.





FITTING ROOF BARS

When fitting transverse roof bars, ensure that they are positioned correctly as shown by marks under the longitudinal roof bars.

Use accessories recommended by PEUGEOT and follow the accessory manufacturer's fitting instructions.

In order to place a load on the roof, transverse roof bars must be fitted on the longitudinal roof bars.

After putting the load in place and securing it, retighten the transverse roof bars.

Maximum authorised weight on the roof rack, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (with the exception of bicycle carriers): 80 kg.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.



The longitudinal roof bars cannot be removed.

Maximum authorised weight on the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carriers): 75 kg.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the condition of the road, to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

VERY COLD CLIMATE SCREEN*

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.



Fitting

- Offer up the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.
- Press around its edge to engage its fixing clips one by one.

Removal

- Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip in turn.

Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:
- when the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

ACCESSORIES

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is offered by the PEUGEOT dealer network.

These accessories and parts have been tested and approved for reliability and safety.

They are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from PEUGEOT's recommendation and warranty.

Conversion kits

You can obtain an "Enterprise" kit to convert a trade vehicle to a private car and vice-versa.

"Comfort":

parking sensors, side and rear blinds, door deflectors, isotherm module, head restraint-mounted coat hanger, front centre armrest, reading lamp, scented air freshener...

* According to country.

"Transport solutions":

boot liner, boot mat, boot spacers, storage under parcel shelf, transverse roof bars, bicycle carrier, ski carrier, roof box, towbars, wiring harnesses...

The towbar and its wiring harness must be fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer.

"Style":

leather steering wheel, aluminium gear lever knob, sunroof**, alloy wheels, wheel trims, sport exhaust, body styling kit.

"Security and safety":

anti-theft alarm, wheel security locks, vehicle tracking system, child seats and booster cushions, breathalyser, first aid kit, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, dog guard, front foglamp kit, temporary puncture repair kit, snow chains, anti-skid covers.

** Sunroof which must be fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer.

"Protection":

mats***, mud flaps, seat covers compatible with lateral airbags, vehicle covers, door sill protectors, transluscent bumper protectors.

"Mulitmedia":

audio systems, amplifiers, satellite navigation systems, Bluetooth system, speakers, DVD player, USB Box, WiFi on board...

Depending on the country in which the vehicle is sold, it may be compulsory to have a high visibility safety jacket, warning triangle and spare bulbs available in the vehicle.

Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing on your vehicle any after-market radio communication transmitter with external aerial, we recommend that you contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

The PEUGEOT dealer network will give you the specification for transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

You can also obtain products for cleaning and maintenance (exterior and interior), topping up (screenwash...) and refills (fragrance cartridges, sealant cartridge for the temporary puncture repair kit...) from PEUGEOT dealers.

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption.

Please note this specific warning. You are advised to contact a PEUGEOT representative to be shown the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

*** To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES			
Model codes: 4C... 4E... 4H...	**8FS-C**	**8FR-0**	**5FW-C 5FS-0**	**5FW-F 5FS-9**
PETROL ENGINES	**1.4 litre VTi 16V 95 hp**	**1.4 litre VTi 16V 98 hp**	**1.6 litre VTi 16V 120 hp**	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 397	1 397	1 598	
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 75	77 x 75	77 x 85.8	
Max power: EU standard (kW)	70	72	88	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 750	6 000	6 000	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	136	136	160	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	4 250	4 000	4 250	
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	Yes	
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Auto. (4-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)				
Engine (with filter replacement)	4.25	-	4.25	4.25
Gearbox - Final drive	1.9	-	1.9	-

4C...: 5-door. **4E...:** SW with rear bench seat. **4H...:** SW with individual rear seats.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES				
Model codes: 4C... 4E... 4H...	**N6A-B N6A-C**	**5FX-H**	**5FT-F**	**5FV-8**	**5FV-A**
PETROL ENGINES	**1.6 litre 16V 108 hp**	**1.6 litre THP 16V 150 hp**	**1.6 litre THP 16V 140 hp**	**1.6 litre THP 16V 156 hp**	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 587	1 598		1 598	
Bore x stroke (mm)	78.5 x 82	77 x 85.8		77 x 85.8	
Max power: EU standard (kW)	78	110	103	115	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 800	5 800	6 000	6 000	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	142	240		240	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	4 000	1 400		1 400	
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded		Unleaded	
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes		Yes	
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Auto. (4-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Auto. (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)					
Engine (with filter replacement)	3.25	4.25	4.25	-	-
Gearbox - Final drive	1.9	1.9	-	-	-

4C...: 5-door. **4E...:** SW with rear bench seat. **4H...:** SW with rear individual seats.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES		
Model codes: 4C... 4E... 4H...	**5FU-8**	**RFJ-B RFJ-C**	**RFJ-E RFJ-F**
PETROL ENGINES	**1.6 litre THP 16V 200 hp**	**2 litre 16V 140 hp**	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 598	1 997	
Bore x stroke (mm)	77 x 85.8	85 x 88	
Max power: EU standard (kW)	147	103	
Mex power engine speed (rpm)	5 500	6 000	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	275	200	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 700	4 000	
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	
GEARBOXES	Manual (6-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Auto. (4-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)			
Engine (with filter replacement)	4.25	5	5
Gearbox - Final drive	1.9	1.9	-

4C...: 5-door. **4E...:** SW with rear bench seat. **4H...:** SW with individual rear seats.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES	
Model codes: 4C... 4E... 4H...	**NFU-C/FF**	**RFJ-C/FF**
BIOFLEX ENGINES	**1.6 litre 16V 110 hp**	**2 litre 16V 140 hp**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 587	1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	78.5 x 82	85 x 88
Max power: EU standard (kW)	80 82	103 -
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 800	6 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	147 153	200 -
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	4 000	4 000
Fuel	Unleaded E85	Unleaded E85
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)		
Engine (with filter replacement)	3.25	5.0
Gearbox - Final drive	1.9	1.9

4C...: 5-door. **4E...:** SW with rear bench seat. **4H...:** SW with individual rear seats.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.4 litre VTi 16V 95 hp	1.4 litre VTi 16V 98 hp	1.6 litre VTi 16V 120 hp			
Gearboxes	Manual	Manual	Manual		Auto.	
Model codes: 4C...	8FS-C	8FR-0	5FW-C	5FS-0	5FW-F	5FS-9
- Unladen weight	1 271	1 271	1 287	1 287	1 312	1 312
- Kerb weight	1 346	1 346	1 362	1 362	1 387	1 387
- Payload	489	509	528	528	512	523
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 760	1 780	1 815	1 815	1 824	1 835
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 960	2 980	3 215	3 315	3 094	3 085
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 200	1 200	1 400	1 500	1 270	1 250
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 450	1 450	1 650	1 500	1 520	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	670	670	680	680	690	690
- Recommended nose weight	58	60	76	76	61	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.6 litre 16V 108 hp	1.6 litre THP 16V 150 hp	1.6 litre THP 16V 140 hp	1.6 litre THP 16V 156 hp	
Gearboxes	Manual	Manual	Auto.	Manual	Auto.
Model codes: 4C...	N6A-B N6A-C	5FX-H	5FT-F	5FV-8	5FV-A
- Unladen weight	1 302	1 340	1 355	1 315	1 368
- Kerb weight	1 377	1 415	1 430	1 390	1 443
- Payload	518	500	500	525	502
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 820	1 840	1 855	1 840	1 870
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 020	3 290	3 255	3 390	3 470
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 200	1 450	1 400	1 550	1 600
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 450	1 700	1 650	1 650	1 650
- Unbraked trailer	685	705	715	695	720
- Recommended nose weight	60	68	66	70	70

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.6 litre THP 16V 200 hp	2 litre 16V 140 hp	
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Manual**	**Auto.**
Model codes: 4C...	**5FU-8**	**RFJ-B RFJ-C**	**RFJ-E RFJ-F**
- Unladen weight	1 399	1 323	1 348
- Kerb weight	1 474	1 398	1 423
- Payload	451	502	502
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 850	1 825	1 850
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	1 850	3 225	3 250
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	X	1 400	1 400
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	X	1 650	1 650
- Unbraked trailer	X	695	710
- Recommended nose weight	X	70	70

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

BioFlex engines	1.6 litre 16V 110 hp	2 litre 16V 140 hp
Gearboxes	Manual	Manual
Model codes: 4C...	NFU-C/FF	RFJ-C/FF
- Unladen weight	1 307	1 307
- Kerb weight	1 382	1 382
- Payload	447	447
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 754	1 754
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 954	3 154
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 200	1 400
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 450	1 650
- Unbraked trailer	690	690
- Recommended nose weight	60	66

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.4 litre VTi 16V 95 hp	1.4 litre VTi 16V 98 hp	1.6 litre VTi 16V 120 hp				1.6 litre 16V 108 hp
Gearboxes	Manual	Manual	Manual		Auto.		Manual
Model codes: 4E...	8FS-C	8FR-0	5FW-C	5FS-0	5FW-F	5FS-9	N6A-B N6A-C
- Unladen weight	1 351	1 320	1 362	1 320	1 388	1 356	1 374
- Kerb weight	1 426	1 395	1 437	1 395	1 463	1 431	1 449
- Payload	569	600	560	602	560	592	576
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 920	1 920	1 922	1 922	1 948	1 948	1 950
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 970	3 020	3 172	3 272	3 098	3 298	3 150
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 050	1 100	1 250	1 350	1 150	1 350	1 200
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 350	1 100	1 550	1 500	1 450	1 500	1 400
- Unbraked trailer	710	695	715	695	730	715	720
- Recommended nose weight	60	60	65	65	60	60	75

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.6 litre THP 16V 150 hp	1.6 litre THP 16V 140 hp	1.6 litre THP 16V 156 hp		BioFlex 2 litre 16V 140 hp
Gearboxes	Manual	Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual
Model codes: 4E...	5FX-H	5FT-F	5FV-8	5FV-A	RFJ-C/FF
- Unladen weight	1 384	1 400	1 400	1 428	1 374
- Kerb weight	1 459	1 475	1 475	1 503	1 449
- Payload	560	560	540	537	561
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 944	1 960	1 940	1 965	1 935
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 394	3 160	3 390	3 515	3 285
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 450	1 200	1 450	1 550	1 350
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 700	1 500	1 600	1 550	1 550
- Unbraked trailer	725	735	735	750	720
- Recommended nose weight	70	60	65	65	75

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.6 litre VTi 16V 120 hp				1.6 litre 16V 108 hp
Gearboxes	Manual		Auto.		Manual
Model codes: 4H...	5FW-C	5FS-0	5FW-F	5FS-9	N6A-B N6A-C
- Unladen weight	1 440	1 406	1 466	1 430	1 462
- Kerb weight	1 515	1 481	1 541	1 505	1 537
- Payload	660	694	659	700	648
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 100	2 100	2 125	2 130	2 110
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 200	3 300	3 095	3 080	3 110
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 100	1 200	970	950	1 000
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 500	1 400	1 370	1 100	1 350
- Unbraked trailer	750	740	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	60	60	55	55	75

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	1.6 litre THP 16V 150 hp	1.6 litre THP 16V 140 hp	1.6 litre THP 16V 156 hp	
Gearboxes	Manual	Auto.	Manual	Auto.
Model codes: 4H...	5FX-H	5FT-F	5FV-8	5FV-A
- Unladen weight	1 486	1 502	1 481	1 509
- Kerb weight	1 561	1 577	1 556	1 584
- Payload	644	643	649	651
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 130	2 145	2 130	2 160
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 380	3 195	3 380	3 510
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 250	1 050	1 250	1 350
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 650	1 450	1 400	1 350
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	60	60	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Petrol engines	2 litre 16V 140 hp		BioFlex 2 litre 16V 140 hp
Gearboxes	Manual	Auto.	Manual
Model codes: 4H...	RFJ-B RFJ-C	RFJ-E RFJ-F	RFJ-C/FF
- Unladen weight	1 461	1 486	1 471
- Kerb weight	1 536	1 561	1 546
- Payload	659	654	634
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 120	2 140	2 105
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 320	3 340	3 305
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 200	1 200	1 200
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 550	1 550	1 550
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	75	75	75

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES		
Model codes: **4C... 4R... 4E... 4H...**	**9HX-B** **9HX-C**	**9HV-C**	**9HP-0**
DIESEL ENGINES	**1.6 litre Turbo HDI 90 hp**		**1.6 litre Turbo HDI 92 hp**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560		1 560
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3		75 x 88.3
Max power: EU standard (kW)	66		68
Max power engine speed (rpm)	4 000		4 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	215		230
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750		1 750
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes		Yes
Particle emission filter	No	Yes	Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)		Manual (5-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)			
Engine (with filter replacement)	3.75		-
Gearbox - Final drive	1.9		-

4C...: 5-door.
4R...: 5-door "Van".
4E...: SW with rear bench seat.
4H...: SW with individual rear seats.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES					
Model codes: 4C... 4R... 4E... 4H...	**9HY-B**	**9HZ-C**	**9HZ-H**	**9HZ-H/P**	**9HR-8**	**9HR-8/P**
DIESEL ENGINES	**1.6 litre Turbo HDI 110 hp**				**1.6 litre Turbo HDI 112 hp**	
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560				1 560	
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3				75 x 88.3	
Max power: EU standard (kW)	80				82	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	4 000				3 600	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	240				270	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750				1 750	
Fuel	Diesel				Diesel	
Catalytic converter	Yes				Yes	
Particle emission filter	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
GEARBOXES	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Electronic gear control (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Electronic gear control (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)						
Engine (with filter replacement)	3.75	3.75	3.75	3.75	-	-
Gearbox - Final drive	1.9	1.9	1.9	-	-	-

4C...: 5-door.
4R...: 5-door "Van".
4E...: SW with rear bench seat.
4H...: SW with individual rear seats.

MODELS:	ENGINES AND GEARBOXES			
Model codes: 4C... 4E... 4H...	**RHR-H**	**RHR-J**	**RHF-8**	**RHH-A**
DIESEL ENGINES	**2 litre Turbo HDI 136 hp**		**2 litre Turbo HDI 140 hp**	**2 litre Turbo HDI 163 hp**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 997		1 997	1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	85 x 88		85 x 88	85 x 88
Max power: EU standard (kW)	100		103	120
Max power engine speed (rpm)	4 000		4 000	4 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	320		320	340
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	2 000		2 000	2 000
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes		Yes	Yes
Particle emission filter	Yes		Yes	Yes
GEARBOXES	Manual (6-speed)	Auto. (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Auto. (6-speed)
OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)				
Engine (with filter replacement)	5.25	5.25	5.25	-
Gearbox - Final drive	2.4	-	2.4	-

4C...: 5-door. **4E...:** SW with rear bench seat. **4H...:** SW with individual rear seats.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	1.6 litre Turbo HDI 90 hp			1.6 litre Turbo HDI 92 hp
Gearboxes	Manual			Manual
Model codes: 4C... 4R...	9HX-B	9HX-C	9HV-C	9HP-0
- Unladen weight	-	1 303	1 311	1 303 -
- Kerb weight	-	1 378	1 386	1 378 -
- Payload	-	501	502	512 -
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	-	1 804	1 813	1 815 -
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	-	3 074	3 083	2 915 -
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	-	1 270	1 270	1 100
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	-	1 520	1 520	1 300
- Unbraked trailer	-	685	690	685
- Recommended nose weight	-	61	61	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	1.6 litre Turbo HDI 110 hp			
Gearboxes	Manual			Electronic gear control
Model codes: 4C...	9HY-B	9HZ-C	9HZ-H	9HZ-H/P
- Unladen weight	1 331	1 322	1 337	1 334
- Kerb weight	1 406	1 397	1 412	1 409
- Payload	514	528	523	527
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 845	1 850	1 860	1 861
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 115	3 120	3 130	3 131
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 270	1 270	1 270	1 270
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 520	1 520	1 520	1 520
- Unbraked trailer	700	695	705	700
- Recommended nose weight	65	61	61	61

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	1.6 litre Turbo HDI 112 hp	
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic gear control**
Model codes: 4C... 4R...	**9HR-8**	**9HR-8/P**
- Unladen weight	1 318 -	1 319
- Kerb weight	1 393 -	1 394
- Payload	542 -	541
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 860 -	1 860
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 110 -	3 110
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 250	1 250
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 500	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	695	695
- Recommended nose weight	60	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	2 litre Turbo HDI 136 hp		2 litre Turbo HDI 140 hp	2 litre Turbo HDI 163 hp
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Auto.**	**Manual**	**Auto.**
Model codes: 4C...	**RHR-H**	**RHR-J**	**RHF-8**	**RHH-A**
- Unladen weight	1 421	1 447	1 421	1 428
- Kerb weight	1 496	1 522	1 496	1 503
- Payload	500	500	500	532
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 921	1 947	1 921	1 960
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 621	3 597	3 621	3 460
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 700	1 650	1 700	1 500
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 700	1 650	1 700	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	745	750	745	750
- Recommended nose weight	68	66	68	66

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	1.6 litre Turbo HDI 90 hp			1.6 litre Turbo HDI 92 hp	1.6 litre Turbo HDI 110 hp	
Gearboxes	**Manual**			**Manual**	**Manual**	**Electronic Gear Control**
Model codes: 4E...	**9HX-B**	**9HX-C**	**9HV-C**	**9HP-0**	**9HZ-H**	**9HZ-H/P**
- Unladen weight	1 391	1 378	1 392	1 378	1 407	1 409
- Kerb weight	1 466	1 453	1 467	1 453	1 482	1 484
- Payload	579	570	578	570	560	560
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 970	1 948	1 970	1 948	1 967	1 969
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 170	3 148	3 170	3 148	3 167	3 169
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 200	1 200	1 200	1 200	1 200	1 200
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 400	1 500	1 500	1 300	1 500	1 500
- Unbraked trailer	730	725	730	725	740	740
- Recommended nose weight	75	60	60	60	60	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	1.6 litre Turbo HDI 112 hp		2 litre Turbo HDI 136 hp	2 litre Turbo HDI 140 hp
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic gear control**	**Manual**	**Manual**
Model codes: 4E...	**9HR-8**	**9HR-8/P**	**RHR-H**	**RHF-8**
- Unladen weight	1 410	1 413	1 473	1 473
- Kerb weight	1 485	1 488	1 548	1 548
- Payload	560	562	560	560
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 970	1 975	2 033	2 033
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 120	3 125	3 583	3 583
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 150	1 150	1 550	1 550
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 400	1 300	1 700	1 700
- Unbraked trailer	740	740	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	60	60	70	70

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	1.6 litre Turbo HDI 90 hp		1.6 litre Turbo HDI 92 hp
Gearboxes	Manual		Manual
Model codes: 4H...	9HX-B	9HX-C	9HP-0
- Unladen weight	1 480	1 467	1 430
- Kerb weight	1 555	1 542	1 505
- Payload	640	633	670
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 120	2 100	2 100
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 120	3 100	3 100
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 000	1 000	1 000
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 350	1 400	1 200
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	75	60	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	1.6 litre Turbo HDI 110 hp		1.6 litre Turbo HDI 112 hp	
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Electronic Gear Control**	**Manual**	**Electronic Gear Control**
Model codes: 4H...	**9HZ-H**	**9HZ-H/P**	**9HR-8**	**9HR-8/P**
- Unladen weight	1 495	1 498	1 488	1 498
- Kerb weight	1 570	1 573	1 563	1 573
- Payload	655	652	662	652
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 150	2 150	2 150	2 150
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 150	3 150	3 150	3 150
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 000	1 000	1 000	1 000
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 400	1 400	1 250	1 200
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	60	60	60	60

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.



WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

Diesel engines	2 litre Turbo HDI 136 hp		2 litre Turbo HDI 140 hp	2 litre Turbo HDI 163 hp
Gearboxes	**Manual**	**Auto.**	**Manual**	**Auto.**
Model codes: 4H...	**RHR-H**	**RHR-J**	**RHF-8**	**RHH-A**
- Unladen weight	1 575	1 600	1 575	1 603
- Kerb weight	1 650	1 675	1 650	1 678
- Payload	640	640	640	642
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	2 215	2 240	2 215	2 245
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	3 615	3 640	3 615	3 445
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 10 % or 12 % gradient	1 400	1 400	1 400	1 200
- Braked trailer* (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 650	1 650	1 650	1 200
- Unbraked trailer	750	750	750	750
- Recommended nose weight	70	70	70	56

* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount; warning, towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

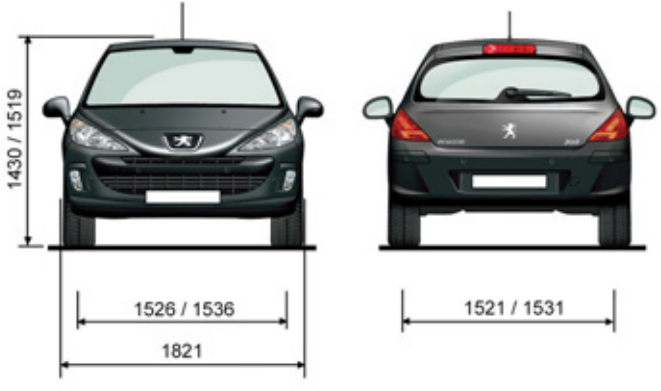
The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

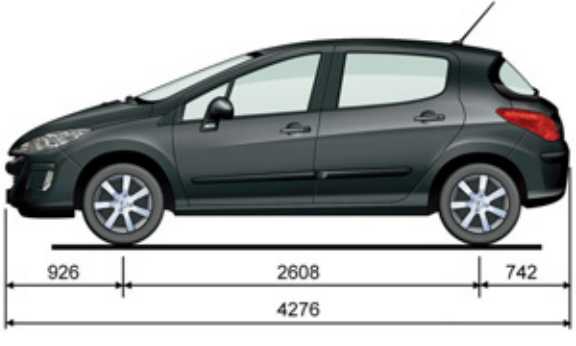
The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

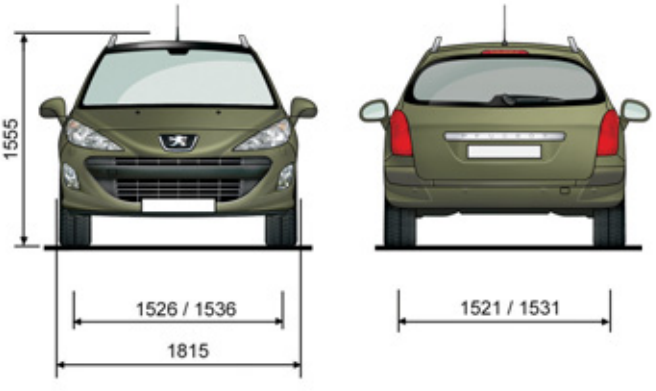
DIMENSIONS (IN MM)

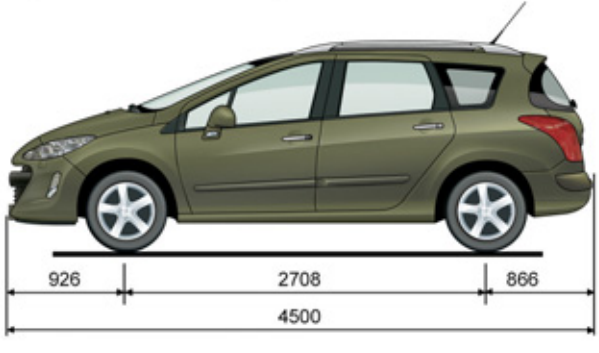
308 saloon





308 SW





IDENTIFICATION MARKINGS

Various visible markings for the identification and tracking of your vehicle.

A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper support.

To gain access to it, raise the plastic cover.

B. VIN on the windscreen lower crossmember.

This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's plate.

This plate is riveted onto the engine mounting.

or

D. Manufacturer's label.

This number is indicated on a self-destroying label affixed to the right hand centre pillar.

This plate/label also indicates the kerb weight, the gross vehicle weight (GVW) and the gross train weight (GTW).

E. Tyre/paint label.

This label is affixed to the front pillar, on the driver's side.

It bears the following information:

- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the wheel rim and tyre sizes,
- the brands of tyre recommended by the manufacturer,
- the inflation pressure of the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.



The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

If the tyre pressures are too low, this increases fuel consumption.



EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

EMERGENCY CALL



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green diode and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the PEUGEOT Emergency team*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The green diode switches off.

The green diode remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It switches off at the end of communication.

This call is dealt with by the PEUGEOT Emergency team which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the appropriate emergency services. In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly refused, the call is dealt with directly by the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag ECU, and independently of any triggering of the airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

* This service is subject to conditions and availability. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

ASSISTANCE CALL



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

OPERATION OF THE SYSTEM



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



! If the orange indicator lamp flashes: there is a system malfunction.
If the orange indicator lamp is lit continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.
In both cases, consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL using Peugeot Connect Media

EMERGENCY CALL



! Warning - the emergency call and the services are only active if the internal telephone is used with a valid SIM card. With a Bluetooth telephone and without a SIM card, these services are not operational.



In an emergency, press the SOS button until an audible signal is heard and a "Confirmation/Cancellation" screen is displayed (if valid SIM card inserted).
A call is made* to the PEUGEOT Emergency team which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the relevant emergency services.
In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly rejected, the call is sent to the emergency services (112).

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the triggering of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.
The message "Deteriorated emergency call" associated with flashing of the orange indicator lamp indicates a malfunction. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

* This service is subject to conditions and availability. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

ASSISTANCE CALL



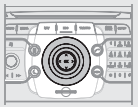


Press this button for access to PEUGEOT services*.



Select "Customer call" to request any information about the PEUGEOT marque.

CUSTOMER CALL



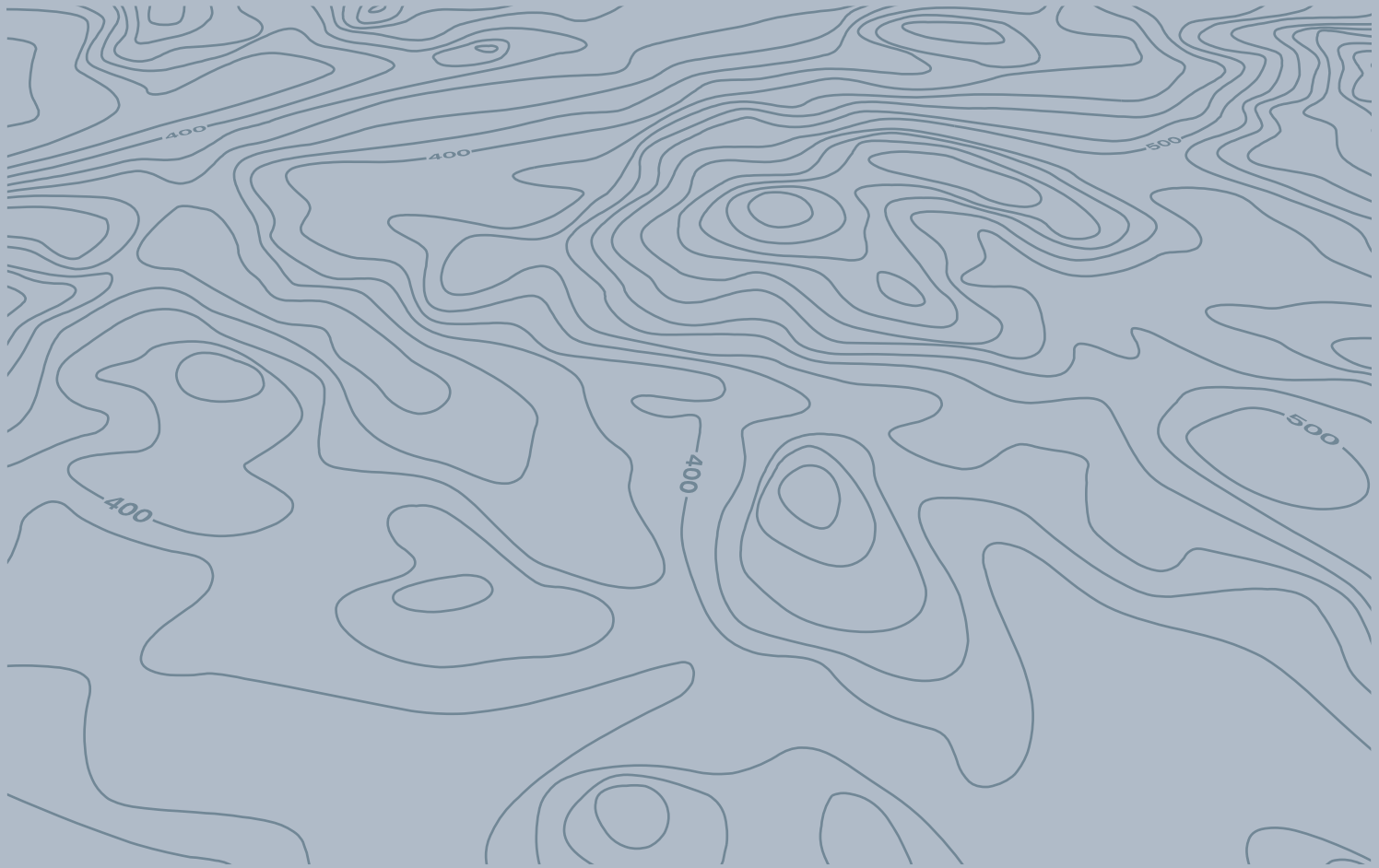


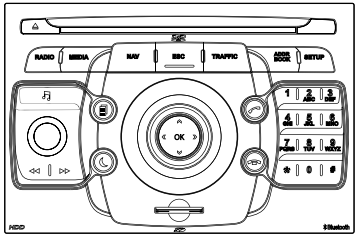
Select "PEUGEOT Assistance" to make a breakdown assistance call.

PEUGEOT ASSISTANCE



* These services and options are subject to conditions and availability.


400
400
500
400
500
400



Peugeot Connect Media

MULTIMEDIA AUDIO EQUIPMENT/BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

GPS EUROPE

The Peugeot Connect Media is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer for configuration of the system.

For safety reasons, it is imperative that the driver carries out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.
When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the Peugeot Connect Media switches off following the activation of the Energy Economy mode.

Certain functions described in this handbook will become available during the course of the year.

CONTENTS

- 01 First steps p. 234
- 02 General operation p. 236
- 03 Navigation - Guidance p. 240
- 04 Traffic information p. 248
- 05 Radio p. 250
- 06 Music media players p. 251
- 07 Making a telephone call p. 256
- 08 Configuration p. 260
- 09 Voice commands and steering mounted controls p. 261
- 10 Screen menu map p. 264
- Frequently asked questions p. 268

01 FIRST STEPS

Peugeot Connect Media CONTROL PANEL





Short press: clears the last character.



Long press: activates voice recognition.

1. CD eject.
2. RADIO: access to the "Radio" Menu.
   Display the list of stations in alphabetical order (FM waveband) or frequency order (AM waveband).

   MEDIA: access to the "Media" Menu (Audio CD, Jukebox, External Device).
   Display the list of tracks. Change of source.

   NAV: access to the "Navigation" Menu and display of the last destinations.

   ESC: abandon the operation in progress.
   Long press: return to the main display.

   TRAFFIC: access to the "Traffic" Menu (function described in detail in sections 02 and 10).

   ADDR BOOK: access to the "Address book" Menu (function described in detail in section 10).

   SETUP: access to the "SETUP" Menu (configuration) (function described in detail in sections 02 and 10).
   Long press: GPS coverage.
3. Audio settings (Balance/Fader, Bass/Treble, Musical Ambience...).
4. Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including message and navigation alert)
   Long press: reinitialisation of the system.
   Short press: mute.
5. Automatic search for a radio station on a lower frequency.
   Selection of the previous CD or MP3 track.
6. Automatic search for a radio station on a higher frequency.
   Selection of the next CD or MP3 track.
7. Normal display or black screen.
8. Selection of the successive display on the screen of "MAP"/"NAV" (if navigation is in progress)/"TEL" (if a conversation is in progress)/"RADIO" or "MEDIA" currently being played.
9. PICK UP: access to the "Phone" menu.
   With Bluetooth connection, accept an incoming call.
10. HANG UP: access to the "Phone" menu.
    Hang up the current call or refuse an incoming call, with Bluetooth connection.
11. Entering of numbers or letters on the alpha-numeric keypad, pre-selection of 10 radio frequencies.
12. SD card reader.

01 FIRST STEPS

Peugeot Connect Media NAVIGATOR



13. OK: confirmation of the highlighted item on the screen.

- 4-direction navigator: press to the left/right.

When the "RADIO" screen is displayed: selection of the previous/next frequency.

When "MEDIA" is displayed: selection of the previous/next track.

When "MAP" or "NAV" is displayed: horizontal movement of the map.

- 4-direction navigator: press up/down.

When "RADIO" is displayed: selection of the previous/next radio station on the list.

When the "MEDIA" screen is displayed: selection of the MP3 directory.

When "MAP" or "NAV" is displayed: vertical movement of the map.

Switch to the next or previous page of a menu.
Movement on the virtual keypad displayed.

14. Rotation of the ring:
When the "RADIO" screen is displayed: selection of the previous/next radio station on the list.

When the "MEDIA" screen is displayed: selection of the previous/next CD or MP3 track.

When "MAP" or "NAV" is displayed: front/rear map zoom.

Movement of the menu selection curser.

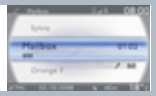
02 GENERAL OPERATION
DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

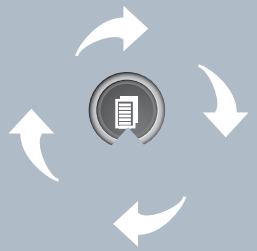
Press the MODE button several times in succession to gain access to the following displays:

RADIO/MUSIC MEDIA/VIDEO



TELEPHONE
(If a conversation is in progress)







FULL SCREEN MAP



NAVIGATION
(If guidance is in progress)

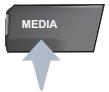


SETUP:
access to the "SETUP" Menu: system language* and voice functions*, voice initialisation (section 09), date and time*, display, unit and system parameters.

* Available according to model.



TRAFFIC:
access to the Traffic Menu: display of the current traffic alerts.



MEDIA:
"DVD-audio" menu
"DVD-Video" menu

Long press: access to the GPS coverage and to the demonstration mode.
For maintenance of the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, without any additional product.

For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section of this handbook.

02 GENERAL OPERATION

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

Pressing OK gives access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

NAVIGATION (IF GUIDANCE IS IN PROGRESS):



- 1 ABORT GUIDANCE
- 1 REPEAT ADVICE
- 1 BLOCK ROAD
  - 2 UNBLOCK
  - 2 MORE
  - 2 LESS
  - 2 CALCULATE
  - 2 ZOOM/SCROLL
  - 2 BROWSE ROUTE
- 1 ROUTE INFO
  - 2 SHOW DESTINATION
  - 2 TRIP INFO
    - 3 Route type
    - 3 Avoid
    - 3 Satellites
    - 3 Stopovers
  - 2 BROWSE ROUTE
  - 2 ZOOM/SCROLL
- 1 VOICE ADVICE
- 1 ROUTE OPTIONS
  - 2 ROUTE TYPE
  - 2 ROUTE DYNAMICS
  - 2 AVOIDANCE CRITERIA
  - 2 RECALCULATE

TELEPHONE:

- 1 END CALL
- 1 HOLD CALL
- 1 DIAL
- 1 DTMF-TONES
- 1 PRIVATE MODE
- 1 MICRO OFF

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS:

- 1 TA
- 1 PLAY OPTIONS
  - 2 NORMAL ORDER
  - 2 RANDOM TRACK
  - 2 SCAN
- 1 SELECT MEDIA

RADIO:

- 1 IN FM MODE
  - 2 TA
  - 2 RDS
  - 2 RADIOTEXT
  - 2 REGIONAL PROG.
  - 2 AM
- 1 IN AM MODE
  - 2 TA
  - 2 REFRESH AM LIST
  - 2 FM

02 GENERAL OPERATION

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

FULL SCREEN MAP:

- 1 ABORT GUIDANCE/RESUME GUIDANCE
- 1 SET DESTINATION/ADD STOPOVER
- 1 POIS NEARBY
- 1 POSITION INFO



- 2 OPTIONS
  - 3 Navigate to
  - 3 Dial
  - 3 Save position
  - 3 Zoom/Scroll
- 1 MAP SETTINGS
  - 2 2D MAP
  - 2 2.5D MAP
  - 2 3D MAP
  - 2 NORTH UP
  - 2 HEADING UP
- 1 ZOOM/SCROLL

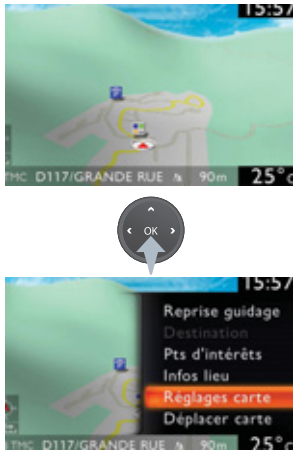
AUDIO DVD (LONG PRESS):

- 1 STOP
- 2 GROUP
  - 3 Group 1.2/n
- 2 PLAY OPTIONS
  - 3 Normal order/Random track/Scan
- 1 TA
- 2 SELECT MEDIA

VIDEO DVD (LONG PRESS):

- 1 PLAY
- 2 STOP
- 2 DVD MENUS
  - 3 DVD menu
  - 3 DVD top menu
  - 3 List of titles
  - 3 List of chapters
- 2 DVD OPTIONS
  - 3 Audio
  - 3 Subtitles
  - 3 Angle

Examples:



Peugeot Connect Media IS:

- the map setting which allows the map to be displayed flat, in perspective or in 3D.

Flat map

Map in perspective

Map in 3D



- configuration of the system by means of voice commands.

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

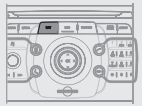
SELECTING A DESTINATION

The "NAVIGATION" voice commands are listed in section 09.
During guidance, a long press on the end of the lighting stalk repeats the last guidance instruction.

1



Press the NAV button.



The list of the last 20 destinations appears under the Navigation Menu function.

2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3



Select the "Destination input" function and press OK to confirm.

DESTINATION INPUT



4



Select the "Address input" function and press OK to confirm.

ADDRESS INPUT



5



Once the country has been selected, turn the ring and select the town function. Press OK to confirm.



6



Select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing OK.



A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

It is possible to scroll the map using the 4-direction navigator. It is possible to select its orientation via the short-cut menu of the "Full screen map". Press OK then select "Map Settings" and confirm.

7



Turn the ring and select OK.
Press OK to confirm.



To speed up the process, the post code can be entered directly after selecting the "Postal code" function.
Use the virtual keypad to enter the letters and digits.

8



Repeat steps 5 to 7 for the "Street" and "House number" functions.



Select the "Save to address book" function to record the address entered in a directory file. Press OK to confirm the selection.
The Peugeot Connect Media permits the recording of more than 4 000 contact files.

To delete a destination; from steps 1 to 3, select "Choose from last destinations".
A long press on one of the destinations displays a list of actions from which you can select:

DELETE ENTRY **DELETE LIST**

9



Then select "Start route guidance" and the press OK to confirm.

START ROUTE GUIDANCE



10



Select the route type:
"Fast route", "Short route", or "Optimized route" and press OK to confirm.



11



Select the road with the colour corresponding to the route chosen and press OK to confirm and start guidance.



It is also possible to select a destination via "Choose from address book" or "Choose from last destinations", by selecting a junction, a town centre, geographic coordinates, or directly on the "Map".

CHOOSE FROM ADDRESS BOOK **CHOOSE FROM LAST DESTINATIONS**

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

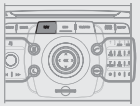
ROUTE OPTIONS

When the map is displayed on the screen, you can select "Map Settings" then "2D Map/2.5D Map/ 3D Map/North Up/Heading Up".
The display of buildings in 3D mode depends on the progress in town mapping.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3



Select the "Route options" function and press OK to confirm.

ROUTE OPTIONS



4



Select the "Route type" function and press OK to confirm. This function allows you to change the route type.

ROUTE TYPE



5



Select the "Route dynamics" function. This function provides access to the "Traffic independent", "Semi-dynamic" and "Dynamic" options.

ROUTE DYNAMICS



6



Select the "Avoidance criteria" function. This function provides access to the "Avoid" options (motorways, toll roads, ferries, tunnels).

AVOIDANCE CRITERIA



7



Turn the ring and select the "Recalculate" function to take into account the route options selected. Press OK to confirm.

RECALCULATE



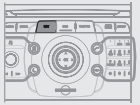
ADDING A STOPOVER

Stopovers can be added to or deleted from the route once the destination has been selected.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the "Navigation" Menu function and press OK to confirm.

"NAVIGATION" MENU



3



Select the "Stopovers" function and press OK to confirm.

STOPOVERS



4



Select the "Add stopover" function (5 stopovers maximum) and press OK to confirm.

ADD STOPOVER



5



Enter a new address, for example.

ADDRESS INPUT



6



Once the new address has been entered, select "Start route guidance" and press OK to confirm.

START ROUTE GUIDANCE



7



Position the stopover on the list and press OK to confirm.



8 Repeat operations 1 to 7 as many times as necessary then select "Recalculate" and press OK to confirm.

To change the stopovers, repeat operations 1 to 3 and select "Rearrange route" (select a stopover, delete it or move it on the list using the ring to change the order, confirm its new position and finish with "Recalculate").

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SEARCHING FOR POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

The points of interest (POIs) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1 

Press the NAV button.



2 

Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3 

Select the "POI search" function and press OK to confirm.

POI SEARCH



4 

Select the "POI nearby" function to search for POIs around the vehicle.

POI NEARBY



5 

Select the "POI near destination" function to search for POIs near the point of arrival of the route.

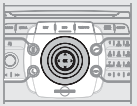
POI NEAR DESTINATION



6 

Select the "POI in city" function to search for POIs in the city required. Select the country then enter the name of the city using the virtual keypad.

POI IN CITY



A list of cities present in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

7 

Select the "POI in country" function to search for POIs in the country required.

POI IN COUNTRY



8 

Select the "POI near route" function to search for POIs near the route.

POI NEAR ROUTE



03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE



This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.

LIST OF PRINCIPAL POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

- Service station
- LPG station
- Garage
- PEUGEOT
- Motor racing circuit
- Covered car park
- Car park
- Rest area
- Hotel
- Restaurant
- Refreshment area
- Picnic area
- Cafeteria

- Airport
- Railway station
- Bus station
- Port
- Industrial estate
- Supermarket
- Bank
- Vending machine
- Tennis court
- Swimming pool
- Golf course
- Winter sports resort
- Theatre

- Cinema
- Camp site
- Theme parks
- Hospital
- Pharmacy
- Police station
- School
- Post office
- Museum
- Tourist information

- Automatic speed camera*
- Red light camera*
- Risk area*

* According to availability in the country.

UPDATING THE RISK AREAS POIs

1



Download the "Risk areas POIs" update file onto an SD card or USB stick from the Internet. This service is available on www.peugeot.fr or www.peugeot.co.uk.

The files must be copied to the root on the chosen medium.

2



Insert the medium (SD card or USB stick) containing the POI database into the system's SD card reader or USB reader.

3

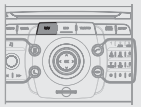


Press NAV, select Navigation Menu, then "Settings", then "Update personal POI".

NAVIGATION MENU

SETTINGS

UPDATE PERSONAL POI



4



Select the medium ("USB" or "SD-Card") used and press OK.



5

Successful downloading is confirmed by a message.

6

The system restarts.

The Risk Areas POIs version is available on the SETUP\ System menu.

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

SPOKEN INSTRUCTION SETTINGS

1



When the navigation is displayed on the screen, press OK then select or deselect "Voice advice" to activate or deactivate the spoken guidance instructions.
Use the volume button to adjust the volume.



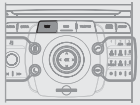
The volume of the Risk Areas POIs alert can only be adjusted during this type of alert.

POINTS OF INTEREST AND RISK AREAS SETTINGS

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3



Select the "Settings" function and press OK to confirm.

SETTINGS



4



Select the "POI categories on Map" function to select the POIs to be displayed on the map by default.

POI CATEGORIES ON MAP



5



Select "Set parameters for risk areas" to gain access to the "Display on map", "Visual alert" and "Sound alert" functions.

SET PARAMETERS FOR RISK AREAS



04 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAYING OF THE TMC MESSAGES

The TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages provide information relating to traffic and weather conditions, received in real time and transmitted to the driver audibly and visually on the navigation map. The guidance system can then suggest an alternative route.

1



Press the TRAFFIC button.



The list of TMC messages appears under the Traffic Menu sorted in order of proximity.

2



Press the TRAFFIC button again or select the Traffic Menu function and press OK to confirm.

TRAFFIC MENU



3



Select "Select preferred list" MESSAGE FILTERING and press OK to confirm.



4



Select the filter of your choice:

MESSAGES ON ROUTE

ALL WARNINGS ON ROUTE

ONLY WARNING MESSAGES

ALL MESSAGES



5



Select "Geo. Filter".

GEO. FILTER



When all of the messages on the route are selected, the addition of a geographic filter is recommended (within a radius of 3 miles (5 km) for example) to reduce the number of messages displayed on the map. The geographic filter follows the movement of the vehicle.

The filters are independent and their results are concealed.
We recommend:
- a filter over 6 miles (10 km) around the vehicle in heavy traffic,
- a filter over 30 miles (50 km) around the vehicle or a filter on the route on motorway journeys.

04 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

PRINCIPAL TMC SYMBOLS

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow/ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:

- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, Jukebox, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 With the current audio source displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2 The shortcut menu for the source appears and gives access to:

TA

3 Select Traffic Announcements (TA) and press the dial to confirm and go to the associated settings.



05 RADIO

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS following mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a failure of the audio equipment.

SELECTING A STATION

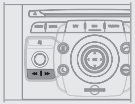
1



Press the RADIO button to display the list of stations received locally sorted in alphabetical order.
Select the station required by turning the ring and press to confirm.



While listening to the radio, press buttons ◂◂ and ▸▸ for the automatic search for a lower or higher frequency.



When the "RADIO" screen is displayed, turn the ring or use the 4-direction navigator to select the previous or next station on the list.



Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad for more than 2 seconds to store the current station. A bleep confirms that it has been stored.
Press the button on the numeric keypad to recall the stored radio station.

RDS - REGIONAL MODE

1



When the current radio station is displayed on the screen, press OK.



2 The radio source short-cuts menu appears and provides access to the following short-cuts:

- TA
- RDS
- RADIOTEXT
- REGIONAL PROG.
- AM

3



Select the function required and press OK to confirm to gain access to the corresponding settings.



The RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3/WMA CD, MP3/WMA SD CARD/USB READER

INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1, 2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3 and the WMA format, an abbreviation of Windows Media Audio and the property of Microsoft, are audio compression standards which permit the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

Connecting an IPod:
To play MP3 type files, connect the IPod using the USB port (limited functions).
To play ITunes files, connect the IPod using the auxiliary socket (AUX).

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.
If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

In order to be read, a USB memory stick must be formatted to FAT 32.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a speed of between 8 Kbps and 320 Kbps and the extension ".wma" with a speed of between 5 Kbps and 384 Kbps.
It also supports the VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g. : " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

During play, exit the "SD-Card" or "USB" source before removing the SD card or the USB memory stick from its reader.

To avoid any risk of theft, remove the SD card or the USB memory stick when you leave your vehicle with the roof open.

06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SELECTING/PLAYING
CD, MP3/WMA CD, MP3/WMA SD CARD/ USB READER

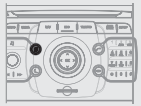
MP3 CDs, SD cards or USB peripherals are the compatible sources.

1 Insert the audio or MP3 CD in the player, the SD card in the card reader or the USB peripheral in the USB reader. Play begins automatically.



! The list of tracks or MP3/WMA files appears under "Media" Menu.

2 Press this button.



3 When the "MEDIA" screen is displayed, turn the ring up or down to select the previous or next compatible source.



4 Press the MEDIA button.



5 Press the MEDIA button again or select the "Media" Menu function and press OK to confirm.

"MEDIA" MENU



6 Select the "Select media" function and press OK to confirm.

SELECT MEDIA



7 Select the music source required. Press OK to confirm. Play begins.



! The playing and displaying of an MP3/WMA compilation may depend on the recording programme and/or the parameters used. We recommend the ISO 9660 recording standard.

06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

JUKEBOX
COPYING A CD, A USB STICK OR AN SD CARD ONTO THE HARD DISK

When copying is in progress, switching off the ignition will interrupt the process but it will resume directly when the ignition is switched on again.

1

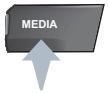


Insert an audio/MP3 CD, a USB memory stick or an SD card.



! Check that the active MEDIA source is that of the medium used (CD, USB or SD card).

2



Press the MEDIA button. Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



3



Select "Jukebox management" then "Add files"and press OK at each step to confirm.

ADD FILES



4



Select "Add files from MP3-Disc" for example and press OK to validate.

ADD FILES FROM MP3-DISC



5



Select the tracks required then "Rip selection" or select all of the tracks using "Rip all".



6



Select "[New folder]" to create a new folder or select an existing folder (created previously).

[NEW FOLDER]



7



"Do you want to change the names of the tracks that will be ripped?": select "Yes" to change them or "No".

YES **NO**



8



To copy an MP3 CD, then select "Real time ripping", "Fast ripping"/ "High quality (192 kbit/sec)" or "Standard quality (128 kbit/sec)" then select "Start ripping".

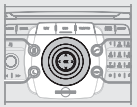


9



Confirm the warning message by pressing "OK" to start the copy.

OK

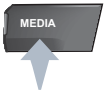


06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

JUKEBOX
RENAMING OR DELETING AN ALBUM

! Check that the active source is not the Jukebox in order to be able to rename or delete a track/folder.

1 Activate the playing of a source other than the Jukebox (CD, radio, etc...).

2 

Press the MEDIA button.



3 
Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



4 
Select "Jukebox management" and press OK to confirm.

JUKEBOX MANAGEMENT

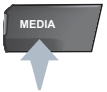


5 
Select "Modify content" and press OK confirm.

MODIFY CONTENT



JUKEBOX
LISTENING TO THE JUKEBOX

1 

Press the MEDIA button.
Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



2 
Select "Jukebox management" and press OK to confirm.



3 
Select "Play options" and press OK to confirm.
Select "Folders & Files" or "Playlists" then press OK to confirm.



Press the ESC button to return to the first file level.
Playlists can be created in the Jukebox.
Media Menu> Jukebox management> Create new playlist. Add the tracks required one by one then save the change. The "Playlists" play mode must then be selected.

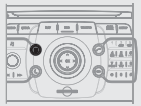
06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

VIEWING A VIDEO DVD

1 Insert the DVD in the player. Play begins automatically.



2 If the DVD does not appear on the screen, press the MODE button to gain access to the "MEDIA" screen which displays the DVD screen.



3 Press the MEDIA button to gain access to the DVD menu at any time, or to the functions of the Media Menu which adjust the video (brightness/ contrast, image format...).



The 4-direction navigator and the chromed ring allow you to move the DVD selection cursor. Change chapter by pressing the ⏭ or ⏮ button.

! Select the video source required ("DVD-Video", "External device (AV)"). Press OK to confirm. Play begins.

USING AN EXTERNAL DEVICE (AUX)
AUDIO/VIDEO CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1 Connect the portable equipment (MP3 player, camcorder, camera…) to the RCA sockets (white and red for audio; red and yellow for video) in the glove box using an audio cable.

2 MEDIA Press the MEDIA button then press it again or select the Media Menu function and press OK to confirm.



! If the external device is not activated, select "Ext. Device (Aux) management" to activate it.

3 Select "Select media" then "External device (AV)" and press OK to activate it.

EXTERNAL DEVICE



4 Select the AUX music source and press OK to confirm. Play begins automatically.



! The display and management of the controls is via the portable equipment.

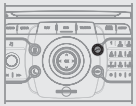
07 USING THE TELEPHONE

CHOOSING BETWEEN THE BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE/INTERNAL TELEPHONE

1



To activate the Bluetooth telephone or the internal telephone, press PICK UP TEL.



2



Select Phone menu, then "Select phone" then choose between "Telephone off", "Use Bluetooth phone" or "Use internal phone". Press OK at each step to confirm.



! The system can only be connected to one Bluetooth telephone and one SIM card (Internal telephone) at the same time.
In this case, the phone book is synchronised with the Bluetooth telephone.

07 USING THE TELEPHONE

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

* The services available via the telephone depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from dealers.

! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the Peugeot Connect Media must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function.
The last telephone connected is reconnected automatically.



2 Press the TEL button.



3 If no telephone is connected, the system prompts you to "Connect phone". Select "Yes" and press OK to confirm.



The list of telephones connected previously (4 maximum) appears on the multifunction screen. Select the telephone required then select "Connect phone" for a new connection. Select "Delete pairing" to cancel the connection to the telephone.

4 For a first connection, select "Search phone" and press OK to confirm. Then select the name of the telephone.

SEARCH PHONE



5 Enter the authentication code on the telephone. The code to be entered is displayed on the screen.



i Once the telephone has been connected, the Peugeot Connect Media can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes*.

1 To change the telephone connected, press the TEL button, then select Phone menu, then "Select phone" then "Connect Bluetooth phone" then select the telephone required or "Search phone".
Press OK at each step to confirm.



07 USING THE TELEPHONE

USING THE INTERNAL TELEPHONE WITH SIM CARD

If you have declined to use the internal telephone for personal calls, you can still connect a Bluetooth telephone to receive your calls on the vehicle's audio system.

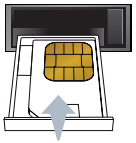
1



Extract the holder by pressing the eject button.

2





Install the SIM card in the holder and then insert it in the slot.

3

To remove the SIM card, repeat step 1.

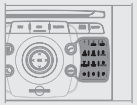
! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the SIM card installation operations must be carried out when stationary.

1



Enter the PIN code on the keypad then select OK and confirm.

REMEMBER PIN

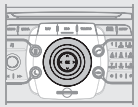


When entering your PIN code, tick the "Remember PIN" tab to allow use of the telephone without having to enter this code when it is used subsequently.

2



The system asks "Do you want to switch to the internal phone?", select "Yes" if you wish to use your SIM card for your personal calls. Otherwise, only the emergency call and the services will use the SIM card.



Once the SIM card has been installed, the system can synchronise the address book and the call list.
This synchronisation may take a few minutes.

07 USING THE TELEPHONE

RECEIVING A CALL

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the screen.

2 

Select the "Yes" tab to accept or "No" to refuse and confirm by pressing OK.

YES NO

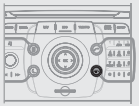


The PICK UP TEL button accepts, the HANG UP TEL button refuses the incoming call.

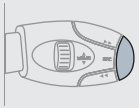
3 

To hang up, press the HANG UP TEL button or press OK and select "End call" then confirm by pressing OK.

END CALL



Press the end of the steering mounted control to accept the call or end the call in progress.



MAKING A CALL

1 

Press the PICK UP TEL button.



The list of the last 20 calls made and received in the vehicle appears under "Phone" menu. You can select a number and press OK to make the call.

2 

Select the "Phone" menu function and press OK to confirm.

"PHONE" MENU



3 

Select "Dial number", then dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad.

DIAL NUMBER



It is also possible to select a number from the address book. You can select "Dial from address book". The Peugeot Connect Media can record up to 4 096 entries.

Press the end of the steering mounted control for more than two seconds to open the address book.

08 CONFIGURATION

SETTING THE DATE AND TIME

This function provides access to the options in the SETUP menu.

Principle of the GPS synchro (GMT):

1. Confirm the "Synchronise with GPS" selection, the time is then set to GMT universal time, the date is also updated.
2. Using the 4-direction navigator, move the cursor to the time fields and press OK.
3. You can then use the ring to set the time to the time zone of your choice.

Take care when changing between summer/winter time, the time zone must be changed again manually.

! This setting operation must be carried out if the battery has been disconnected.

1 SETUP

Press the SETUP button.



2

Select the "Date & Time" function and press OK to confirm.

DATE & TIME



3

Select the "Set date & time" function and press OK to confirm.

SET DATE & TIME



4

Set the parameters using the ring and move on to the next using the 4-direction navigator.
Press OK to confirm.



5

Select the "Date format" function and press OK to confirm.
Select the format required using the ring and press OK to confirm.



6

Select the "Time format" function and press OK to confirm.
Select the format required using the ring and press OK to confirm.



Pressing the SETUP button for more than 2 seconds permits access to:

DESCRIPTION OF THE UNIT

GPS COVERAGE

DEMO MODE

09 VOICE COMMANDS AND STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

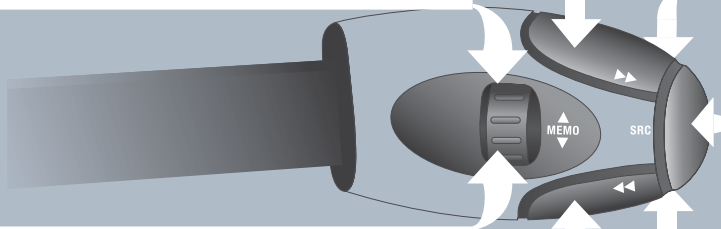
STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

Wiper stalk: display of "RADIO" and "MEDIA".
Lighting stalk: activation of the voice command by means of a short press; indication of the current navigation instruction by means of a long press.

RADIO: selection of the next stored station.
Audio CD: selection of the next track.
If "MEDIA" is displayed on the screen:
MP3 CD/CARD/JUKEBOX: selection of the next directory.
Selection of the next entry in the address book.

RADIO: automatic search for a higher frequency.
CD/SD CARD/JUKEBOX: selection of the next track.
CD/SD CARD/JUKEBOX: continuous press: fast forward play.

Volume increase.



- Change the sound source.
- Make a call from the address book.
- Pick up/Hang up the telephone.
- Press for more than 2 seconds: access to the address book.

Mute: by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound: by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Volume decrease.

RADIO: selection of the previous stored station.
Audio CD: selection of the previous track.
If "MEDIA" is displayed on the screen:
MP3 CD/SD CARD/JUKEBOX: selection of the previous directory.
Selection of the previous entry in the address book.

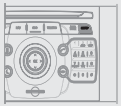
RADIO: automatic search for a lower frequency.
CD/SD CARD/JUKEBOX: selection of the previous track.
CD/SD CARD/JUKEBOX: continuous press: fast backward play.

VOICE COMMANDS - VOICE RECO. INITIATION

1 Before using the system for the first time, you are advised to listen to, say and repeat the instructions for use.

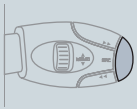
2 

Press the SETUP button and select the "Language & Speech" function. Turn the ring and select "Voice control". Activate the voice recognition.
Select "Tutorial".



The phrases to be spoken according to the context are indicated in the tables below.
Speak and Peugeot Connect Media acts.





Long press on this button or press on the end of the lighting stalk: activates the voice recognition.

CONTEXT	SAY	ACTION
GENERAL	Help address book Help voice control Help media Help navigation Help telephone Help radio Cancel Correction	Access to the address book help Access to the voice reco help Access to the media management help Access to the guidance, navigation help Access to the telephone help Access to the radio help To cancel a voice command which is in progress Request to correct the last voice recognition carried out Clear
RADIO	Select station Station <tts:stationName> Read out station list Enter frequency Select wave band AM FM TA on TA off	Select a radio station Select a radio station using its RDS description <tts:station Name> from the RADIO list Listen to the list of stations available Listen to the frequency of the current radio station Choose the frequency waveband (AM or FM) Change the frequency waveband to AM Change the frequency waveband to FM Activate the Traffic Info (TA) Deactivate the Traffic Info
NAVIGATION	Destination input Voice advice off Voice advice on Save address Start guidance Abort guidance Navigate entry POI Search	Command to enter a new destination address Deactivate the spoken guidance instructions Activate the spoken guidance instructions Save an address in the address book Start guidance (once the address has been entered) Stop the guidance Start guidance to a file in the address book Start guidance to a point of interest

VOICE COMMANDS - VOICE RECO. INITIATION



CONTEXT	SAY	ACTION
MEDIA	Media Select media Single slot Jukebox USB External device SD-Card Track <1 - 1000> Folder <1 - 1000>	Select the MEDIA source Choose a source Select the CD player source Select the Jukebox source Select the USB reader source Select the audio AUX input source Select the SD card source Select a specific track (number between 1 and 1 000) on the active MEDIUM Select a Folder (number between 1 and 1 000) on the active MEDIUM
TELEPHONE	Phone menu Enter number Phone book Dial Save number Accept Reject	Open the Telephone Menu Enter a telephone number to be called Open the phone book Make a call Save a number in the phone book Accept an incoming call Refuse an incoming call
ADDRESS BOOK	Address book menu Call <entry> Navigate <entry>	Open the address book Call file using its description <file> as described in the address book Start guidance to an address in the address book using its description <file>

10 SCREEN MENU MAP



1 **MAIN FUNCTION**
2 **CHOICE A**
3 **choice A1**
3 **choice A2**
2 **CHOICE B...**



1 **"TRAFFIC" MENU**
2 **SELECT PREFERRED LIST**
3 **Messages on route**
3 **Only warnings on route**
3 **All warning messages**
3 **All messages**
3 **Geo. Filter**
4 Deactivate PIN
4 Within 2 miles (3 km)
4 Within 3 miles (5 km)
4 Within 6 miles (10 km)
4 Within 30 miles (50 km)
2 **READ OUT SETTINGS**
3 **On confirmation**
3 **Incoming messages**
2 **TMC STATION INFORMATION**



1 **"MEDIA" MENU**
2 **SELECT MEDIA**
3 **Audio CD/MP3-Disc/DVD-Audio/DVD-Video**
3 **Jukebox (Folders & Files)**
3 **SD-Card**
3 **USB**
3 **External device (audio/AV)**
2 **JUKEBOX MANAGEMENT**
3 **Add files**
3 **Create folder**
3 **Modify content**
3 **Edit playlist**
3 **Play options**
4 Folders & Files
4 Playlists
3 **Memory capacity**
2 **SOUND SETTINGS**
3 **Refer to the "Sound settings" menu details of which are shown on the next page.**

2 **VIDEO SETTINGS**
3 **Aspect ratio**
3 **Menu language**
3 **Display**
4 Brightness
4 Contrast
4 Colour
3 **AUX standard**
3 **Reset video settings**
2 **EXT. DEVICE (AUX) MANAGEMENT**
3 **Off/Audio/Audio and Video (AV)**



- 1 **"RADIO" MENU**
  - 2 **WAVEBAND**
    - 3 **FM**
    - 3 **AM**
  - 2 **MANUAL TUNE**
  - 2 **SOUND SETTINGS**
    - 3 **Refer to the "Sound settings" menu below.**

- 1 **"SOUND SETTINGS" MENU**
  - 2 **BALANCE/FADER**
  - 2 **BASS/TREBLE**
  - 2 **EQUALIZER**
    - 3 **Linear**
    - 3 **Classic**
    - 3 **Jazz**
    - 3 **Rock/Pop**
    - 3 **Techno**
    - 3 **Vocal**
  - 2 **MUTE REAR SPEAKERS**
  - 2 **LOUDNESS**
  - 2 **SPEED DEPENDENT VOLUME**
  - 2 **RESET SOUND SETTINGS**



- 1 **"NAVIGATION" MENU**
  - 2 **ABORT GUIDANCE/RESUME GUIDANCE**
  - 2 **DESTINATION INPUT**
    - 3 **Address input**
      - 4 Country
      - 4 City
      - 4 Street
      - 4 House number
      - 4 Start route guidance
      - 4 Postal code
      - 4 Save to address book
      - 4 Intersection
      - 4 City district
      - 4 Geo position
      - 4 MAP
    - 3 **Navigate HOME**
    - 3 **Choose from last destinations**
    - 3 **Choose from address book**
  - 2 **STOPOVERS**
    - 3 **Add stopover**
      - 4 Address input
      - 4 Navigate HOME
      - 4 Choose from address book
      - 4 Choose from last destinations
    - 3 **Rearrange route**
    - 3 **Replace stopover**
    - 3 **Delete stopover**
    - 3 **Recalculate**
      - 4 Fast route
      - 4 Short route
      - 4 Optimized route
  - 2 **POI SEARCH**
    - 3 **POI nearby**
    - 3 **POI near destination**
    - 3 **POI in city**
    - 3 **POI in country**
    - 3 **POI near route**
  - 2 **ROUTE OPTIONS**
    - 3 **Route type**
      - 4 POI near destination
      - 4 Short route

- 4 Optimized route
- 4 Subscr. service
- 2 **SETTINGS**
- 3 **Route dynamics**
- 4 Traffic independent
- 4 Semi-dynamic
- 4 Dynamic
- 3 **Avoidance criteria**
- 4 Avoid motorways
- 4 Avoid toll roads
- 4 Avoid tunnels
- 4 Avoid ferries
- 3 **Recalculate**



1 "ADDRESS BOOK" MENU

- 2 **CREATE NEW ENTRY**
- 2 **SHOW MEMORY STATUS**
- 2 **EXPORT ADDRESS BOOK**
- 2 **DELETE ALL VOICE ENTRIES**
- 2 **DELETE ALL ENTRIES**
- 2 **DELETE FOLDER "MY ADDRESSES"**



1 "PHONE" MENU

- 2 **DIAL NUMBER**
- 2 **DIAL FROM ADDRESS BOOK**
- 2 **CALL LISTS**
- 2 **MESSAGES**
- 2 **SELECT PHONE**
- 3 **Telephone off**
- 3 **Use Bluetooth phone**
- 3 **Use internal phone**
- 3 **Connect Bluetooth phone**
- 4 Search phone
- 5 Disconnect phone
- 5 Rename phone
- 5 Delete pairing
- 5 Delete all pairings
- 5 Show details
- 2 **SETTINGS**
- 3 **Automatic answering system**
- 3 **Select ring tone**
- 3 **Phone/Ring tone volume**
- 3 **Enter mailbox number**
- 3 **Internal phone settings**
- 3 **Automatically accept call**
- 3 **Signal waiting call (?)**
- 3 **Show status**
- 3 **Activate waiting call**
- 3 **Deactivate waiting call**
- 3 **Call forward (?)**
- 3 **Show status**
- 3 **Activate call forward**
- 3 **Deactivate call forward**
- 3 **Suppress own number**
- 3 **Select network**
- 3 **Set network automatically**
- 3 **Set network manually**
- 3 **Search for networks**
- 3 **PIN settings**
- 3 **Change PIN**
- 4 Activate PIN
- 4 Deactivate PIN
- 3 **Remember PIN**
- 3 **SIM-card memory status**



- 1 **"SETUP" MENU**
  - 2 **LANGUAGE & SPEECH**
    - 3 **Menu language**
      - 4 Deutsch
      - 4 English
      - 4 Español
      - 4 Français
      - 4 Italiano
      - 4 Nederlands
      - 4 Polski
      - 4 Portuguese
    - 3 **Voice control**
      - 4 Voice control active
      - 4 Tutorial
        - 5 Basics
        - 5 Examples
        - 5 Tips
      - 4 Speaker adaptation
        - 5 New speaker adaptation
        - 5 Delete speaker adaptation
    - 3 **Voice output volume**
  - 2 **DATE & TIME**
    - 3 **Set date & time**
    - 3 **Date format**
    - 3 **Time format**
  - 2 **DISPLAY**
    - 3 **Brightness**
    - 3 **Colour**
      - 4 Steel
      - 4 blue light (only in day mode)
      - 4 Orange Ray
      - 4 Blue Flame
    - 3 **MAP colour**
      - 4 Day mode for MAP
      - 4 Night mode for MAP
      - 4 Auto. Day/Night for MAP
  - 2 **UNITS**
    - 3 **Temperature**
      - 4 Celsius
      - 4 Fahrenheit
    - 3 **Metric/Imperial**
      - 4 km
      - 4 Miles
  - 2 **SYSTEM**
    - 3 **Factory reset**
    - 3 **Software version**
    - 3 **Automatic scrolling**

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the Peugeot Connect Media.

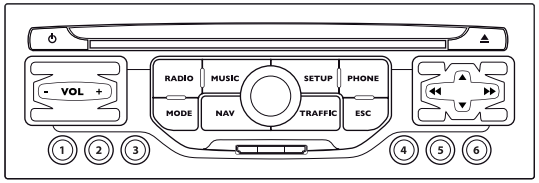
QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "Linear" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to inadequate quality, certain recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...)	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press RADIO, select Radio Menu then "Waveband" to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The "TA" box is ticked. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The time taken to calculate a route sometimes seems longer than usual.	The performance of the system may slow down temporarily if a CD/DVD is being copied onto the Jukebox at the same time as a route is being calculated.	Wait until the CD/DVD has been copied or stop the copying before starting the guidance function.
I receive a speed camera alert for a speed camera which is not on my route.	The system announces all speed cameras positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may detect speed cameras located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the speed camera.
The speed camera audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate the audible warning on Navigation Menu, Settings, Set parameters for risk areas.
	The alert volume is set to minimum.	Increase the volume of the alert when passing a speed camera.
Does the emergency call function work without a SIM card?	No, as certain national regulations impose the presence of a SIM card in order to make an emergency call.	Insert a valid SIM card in the slot.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage").
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the exclusion criteria on the Navigation Menu ("Route options" - "Avoidance criteria").
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds.	This phenomenon is normal.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the equipment may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check that your telephone is visible.
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	A list of compatible Bluetooth mobile telephones is available from the dealer network.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the Peugeot Connect Media, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
The system does not play the DVD.	The region protection may not be compatible.	Insert DVDs which have compatible region protection.
I cannot copy the CD to the Jukebox.	The wrong source is selected.	Change the active source to CD.
	The CD is copy-protected.	It is normal that a protected CD cannot be copied.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending of the SMS to the system.	Use your SIM card and the internal telephone.
	The SIM card used is a twin card.	Use the original SIM card to receive the SMS.
I cannot update the hazardous location POIs.	The Navigation Menu - "Update personal POI" is not displayed.	Check that the medium used for the update (SD card or USB stick) is inserted correctly.
	An error message is displayed at the end of the procedure.	- Start the procedure again in full. - Consult a PEUGEOT dealer if the problem persists. - Check that the data on the MEDIUM is supplied by an official partner of PEUGEOT.
The voice frequencies (DTMF) are not active when I am communicating and I press numbers on the keypad.	The numeric buttons on the keypad are only active for calls if the display is in telephone mode.	To activate them, press the MODE button until the telephone is displayed on the screen.
An accident area which does not concern me is displayed on the screen.	The accident areas are displayed near a point defined on the map and in relation to a direction of travel.	The alert may be triggered when travelling under a road or near a road which has a speed camera.



Peugeot Connect Navigation

MULTIMEDIA AUDIO EQUIPMENT/BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE
GPS EUROPE BY SD CARD

The Peugeot Connect Navigation is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer for configuration of the system.

For safety reasons, it is imperative that the driver carries out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.
When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the Peugeot Connect Navigation switches off following the activation of the Energy Economy mode.

Certain functions described in this handbook will become available during the course of the year.

CONTENTS

- 01 First steps p. 274
- 02 General operation p. 275
- 03 Navigation - Guidance p. 277
- 04 Traffic information p. 284
- 05 Radio p. 286
- 06 Music media players p. 287
- 07 Bluetooth telephone p. 290
- 08 Configuration p. 292
- 09 Steering mounted controls p. 293
- 10 Screen menu map p. 294
- Frequently asked questions p. 297

01 FIRST STEPS

Peugeot Connect Navigation CONTROL PANEL



1. Engine not running
- Short press: on/off.
- Long press: CD pause, mute for the radio.

Engine running
- Short press: CD pause, mute for the radio.
- Long press: reinitialisation of the system.

2. Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including navigation messages and alerts).

3. Access to the "Radio" Menu. Display the list of stations.

4. Access to the "Music" Menu. Display the tracks.

3 - 4. Long press: access to the audio settings: front/rear and left/right balance, bass/treble, equalizer, loudness, automatic volume adjustment, initialise the settings.

5. Access to the "SETUP" Menu.
Long press: access to the GPS coverage and the demonstration mode.

6. Access to the "Phone" Menu. Display the call list.

7. Access to the "MODE" Menu.
Selection of the successive display of:
Radio, Map, NAV (if navigation is in progress), Telephone (if a conversation is in progress), Trip Computer.
Long press: display of a black screen (DARK).

8. Access to the "Navigation" Menu. Display the last destinations.

9. Access to the "Traffic" Menu. Display the current traffic alerts.

10. ESC: abandon the operation in progress.

11. CD eject.

12. Selection of the previous/next radio station from the list.
Selection of the previous/next CD.
Selection of the previous/next MP3 directory.
Selection of the previous/next page of a list.

13. Selection of the previous/next radio station.
Selection of the previous/next CD or MP3 track.
Selection of the previous/next line of a list.

14. Buttons 1 to 6:
Selection of the stored radio station.
Selection of the CD in the CD changer.
Long press: store the current radio station.

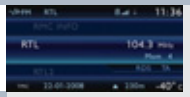
15. Reader for navigation SD card only.

16. Dial for selection of the screen display and according to the context of the menu.
Short press: contextual menu or confirmation.
Long press: specific contextual menu of the list displayed.

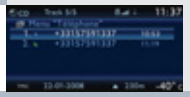
02 GENERAL OPERATION

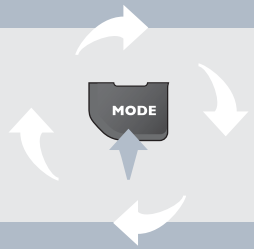
Press the MODE button several times in succession for access to the following menus:

RADIO/MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS



TELEPHONE
(If a conversation is in progress)



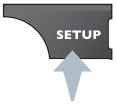




FULL SCREEN MAP



NAVIGATION
(If guidance is in progress)



SETUP:
system language*, date and time*, display, vehicle settings*, unit and system settings, "Demo mode".

* Depending on model.



TRAFFIC:
TMC information and messages.

For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, with no additional product.

For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

02 GENERAL OPERATION

DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

A press on the OK dial gives access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

NAVIGATION (IF GUIDANCE IS IN PROGRESS):

- 1 ABORT GUIDANCE
- 1 REPEAT ADVICE
- 1 BLOCK ROAD
- 1 ROUTE INFO
  - 2 SHOW DESTINATION
  - 2 TRIP INFO
    - 3 Route type
    - 3 Avoid
    - 3 Satellites
- 1 ZOOM/SCROLL
- 1 VOICE ADVICE
- 1 ROUTE OPTIONS

TELEPHONE:

- 1 END CALL
- 1 HOLD CALL
- 1 DIAL
- 1 DTMF-TONES
- 1 PRIVATE MODE
- 1 MICRO OFF

MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS:

- 1 TRAFFIC INFO (TA)
- 1 PLAY OPTIONS
  - 2 NORMAL ORDER
  - 2 RANDOM TRACK
  - 2 REPEAT FOLDER
  - 2 SCAN
- 1 SELECT MUSIC

RADIO:

- 1 IN FM MODE
  - 2 TRAFFIC INFO (TA)
  - 2 RDS
  - 2 RADIOTEXT
  - 2 REGIONAL PROG.
  - 2 AM
- 1 IN AM MODE
  - 2 TA
  - 2 REFRESH AM LIST
  - 2 FM

FULL SCREEN MAP:

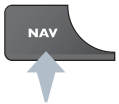
- 1 ABORT GUIDANCE/RESUME GUIDANCE
- 1 SET DESTINATION
- 1 POIS NEARBY
- 1 POSITION INFO
- 1 MAP SETTINGS
- 1 ZOOM/SCROLL

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

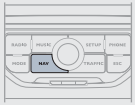
SELECTING A DESTINATION

Insert the SD card in the front panel reader and leave it there to use the Navigation functions.
The navigation SD card data must not be modified.
Map data updates are available from PEUGEOT dealers.

1



Press the NAV button.



The list of the last 20 destinations appears under the Navigation Menu function.

2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3



Select the "Destination input" function and press the dial to confirm.

DESTINATION INPUT



4



Select the "Address input" function and press the dial to confirm.

ADDRESS INPUT



5



Once the country has been selected, turn the dial and select the town function. Press the dial to confirm.



6



Select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing the dial.



A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

To clear a destination; from steps 1 to 3, select "Choose from last destinations".
A long press on one of the destinations displays a list of actions from which you can select:
Delete entry
Delete list

7



Turn the dial and select OK.
Press the dial to confirm.

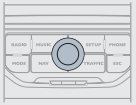


To speed up the process, the post code can be entered directly after selecting the "Postal code" function.
Use the virtual keypad to enter the letters and digits.

8



Repeat steps 5 to 7 for the "Street" and "House number" functions.



Select the "Save to address book" function to record the address entered in a directory file. Press the dial to confirm the selection.
Peugeot Connect Navigation allows up to 500 contact files to be recorded.

9



During guidance, pressing the end of the lighting stalk repeats the last guidance instruction.



10



Then select "Start route guidance" and the press the dial to confirm.

START ROUTE GUIDANCE



Select the route type:
"Fast route", "Short route" or "Optimized route" and press the dial to confirm.
It is also possible to select a destination via "Choose from address book" or "Choose from last destinations".

CHOOSE FROM ADDRESS BOOK **CHOOSE FROM LAST DESTINATIONS**

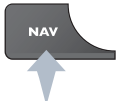
You can zoom in/zoom out on the map using the dial.
It is possible to scroll the map or select its orientation via the short-cut menu of the FULL SCREEN MAP. Press the dial then select "Map settings".

03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

ROUTE OPTIONS

The route selected by the Peugeot Connect Navigation audio/telephone depends directly on the route options.
Changing these options may change the route completely.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3



Select the "Route options" function and press the dial to confirm.

ROUTE OPTIONS



4



Select the "Route type" function and press the dial to confirm. This function allows you to change the route type.

ROUTE TYPE



5



Select the "Route dynamics" function. This function gives access to the "Traffic independent" or "Semi-dynamic" options.

ROUTE DYNAMICS

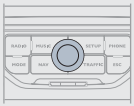


6



Select the "Avoidance criteria" function. This function provides access to the AVOID options (motorways, toll roads, ferries).

AVOIDANCE CRITERIA



7



Turn the dial and select the "Recalculate" function to take into account the route options selected. Press the dial to confirm.

RECALCULATE



03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

ADDING A STOPOVER

Stopovers can be added to the route once the destination has been selected.

1 Press the NAV button.



2 Press the NAV button again or select the "Navigation" Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

"NAVIGATION" MENU



3 Select the "Stopovers" function and press the dial to confirm.

STOPOVERS



4 Select the "Add stopover" function (5 stopovers maximum) and press the dial to confirm.

ADD STOPOVER



5 Enter a new address, for example.

ADDRESS INPUT



6 Once the new address has been entered, select OK and press the dial to confirm.

OK



7 Select "Recalculate" and press the dial to confirm.

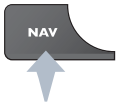
RECALCULATE



The stopover must be completed or deleted in order for the guidance to continue to the next destination. Otherwise, the Peugeot Connect Navigation will always return you to the previous stopover.

SEARCHING FOR POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

1 

Press the NAV button.



2 

Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3 

Select the "POI search" function and press the dial to confirm.

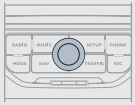
POI SEARCH



4 

Select the "POI nearby" function to search for POIs around the vehicle.

POI NEARBY



5 

Select the "POI near destination" function to search for POIs near the point of arrival of the route.

POI NEAR DESTINATION



6 

Select the "POI in city" function to search for POIs in the city required. Select the country then enter the name of the city using the virtual keypad.

POI IN CITY



A list of cities present in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

7 

Select the "POI in country" function to search for POIs in the country required.

POI IN COUNTRY



8 

Select the "POI near route" function to search for POIs near the route.

POI NEAR ROUTE



03 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

LIST OF PRINCIPAL POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)



This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.



Service station

LPG station

Garage

PEUGEOT

Motor racing circuit

Covered car park

Car park

Rest area

Hotel

Restaurant

Refreshment area

Picnic area

Cafeteria



Airport

Railway station

Bus station

Port

Industrial estate

Supermarket

Bank

Vending machine

Tennis court

Swimming pool

Golf course

Winter sports resort

Theatre



Cinema

Camp site

Theme parks

Hospital

Pharmacy

Police station

School

Post office

Museum

Tourist information

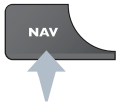
Automatic speed camera*

Red light camera*

Risk area*

* According to availability in the country.

NAVIGATION SETTINGS

1 

Press the NAV button.



2 

Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

NAVIGATION MENU



3 

Select the "Settings" function and press the dial to confirm.

SETTINGS



4 

Select the "Navi volume" function and turn the dial to set the volume of each voice synthesiser (traffic information, alert messages…).

NAVI VOLUME



The volume of the Risk Areas POIs alert can only be adjusted during this type of alert.

5 

Select the "POI categories on Map" function to select the POIs to be displayed on the map by default.

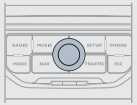
POI CATEGORIES ON MAP



6 

Select "Set parameters for risk areas" to gain access to the "Display on map", "Visual alert" and "Sound alert" functions.

SET PARAMETERS FOR RISK AREAS



UPDATING THE RISK AREAS POIs

This requires an SDHC (High Capacity) compatible reader.
Download the update file from the Internet (www.peugeot.fr or www.peugeot.co.uk).
Open this file and copy the extracted documents to the DATABASE folder on the SD card, replacing the existing files.

04 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAY OF TMC MESSAGES

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages contain information on traffic and weather conditions, received in real time and transmitted to the driver in the form of audible announcements and symbols on the navigation map.
The navigation system can then suggest an alternative route to avoid a traffic problem.

1 

Press the TRAFFIC button.

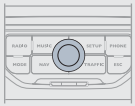


The list of TMC messages appears under the Traffic Menu sorted in order of proximity.

2 

Press the TRAFFIC button again or select the Traffic Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

TRAFFIC MENU

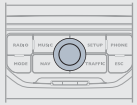


3 

Select the filter of your choice:

MESSAGES ON ROUTE
ONLY WARNINGS ON ROUTE
ALL WARNING MESSAGES
ALL MESSAGES

The messages appear on the map and on the list.
To exit, press ESC.



4 

Select the "Geo. Filter" function and press the dial to confirm.

GEO. FILTER



5 

Then select the radius of the filter in miles (km) required in accordance with the route, press the dial to confirm. When all of the messages on the route are selected, the addition of a geographical filter is recommended (within a radius of 3 miles (5 km) for example) to reduce the number of messages displayed on the map.
The geographical filter follows the movement of the vehicle.



!

The filters are independent and their results are cumulative.
We recommend a filter on the route and a filter around the vehicle of:
- 2 miles (3 km) or 3 miles (5 km) for a region with heavy traffic,
- 6 miles (10 km) for a region with normal traffic,
- 30 miles (50 km) for long journeys (motorway).

04 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

PRINCIPAL TMC SYMBOLS

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:

- Weather reports
- Traffic reports
- Wind
- Fog
- Parking
- Snow/ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, par example:

- Modified signage
- Narrow carriageway
- Slippery surface
- Accident
- Delay
- Roadworks
- Risk of explosion
- Road closed
- Demonstration
- Danger
- No entry
- Traffic jam

RECEIVING TA MESSAGES

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, Jukebox, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1 With the current audio source displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2 The shortcut menu for the source appears and gives access to:

TA

3 Select Traffic Announcements (TA) and press the dial to confirm and go to the associated settings.



05 RADIO

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS following mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a failure of the audio equipment.

SELECTING A STATION

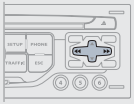
1



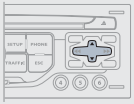
Press the RADIO button to display the list of stations received locally sorted in alphabetical order.
Select the station required by turning the dial and press to confirm.



While listening to the radio, press one of the buttons to select the previous or next station on the list.



A long press of one of the buttons starts the automatic search for a station with a lower or higher frequency.



Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad for more than 2 seconds to store the current station.
Press the button on the numeric keypad to recall the stored radio station.

RDS - REGIONAL MODE

1



When the current radio station is displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2 The radio source short-cuts menu appears and provides access to the following short-cuts:

- TA
- RDS
- RADIOTEXT
- REGIONAL PROG.
- AM

3



Select the function required and press the dial to confirm to gain access to the corresponding settings.



RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

CD, MP3/WMA CD
INFORMATION AND ADVICE

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1, 2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3 and the WMA format, an abbreviation of Windows Media Audio and the property of Microsoft, are audio compression standards which permit the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

The Peugeot Connect Navigation will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a speed of between 8 Kbps and 320 Kbps and the extension ".wma" with a speed of between 5 Kbps and 384 Kbps.
It also supports the VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

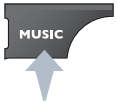
In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.
If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any play or display problems.

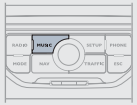
06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

SELECTING/PLAYING MUSIC CD, MP3/WMA CD

1



Press the MUSIC button.



!

The list of tracks or MP3/WMA files appears under "Music" Menu.

2



Press the MUSIC button again or select the "Music" Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

"MUSIC" MENU



3



Select the "Select music" function and press the dial to confirm.

SELECT MUSIC



4



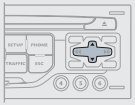
Select the music source required: CD, MP3/WMA CD. Press the dial to confirm. Play begins.



5



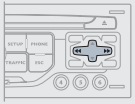
Press the up or down button to select the next/previous folder.



6



Press one of the buttons to select a music track.
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or rewind play.



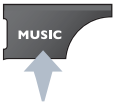
The playing and displaying of an MP3/WMA compilation may depend on the recording programme and/or the settings used. We recommend the ISO 9660 file standard.

06 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

USING THE EXTERNAL INPUT (AUX) AUDIO/RCA CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

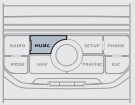
1 Connect the portable equipment (MP3/WMA player…) to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) in the glove box using a JACK/RCA audio cable.



2 

Press the MUSIC button then press it again or select the Music Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

MUSIC MENU



3 

Select the "External device" function and press the dial to activate it.

EXTERNAL DEVICE



4 

Select the AUX music source and press the dial to confirm. Play begins automatically.



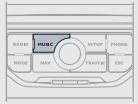
! The display and management of the controls is via the portable equipment.

CD CHANGER

PLAYING A CD (NOT MP3/WMA COMPATIBLE)

1 

Insert one or more CDs in the changer. Press the MUSIC button.



2 

Press the MUSIC button again or select the Music Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

MUSIC MENU



3 

Select the "Select music" function and press the dial to confirm.

SELECT MUSIC



4 

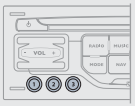
Select the "CD Changer" music source and press the dial to confirm.

CD CHANGER



5 

Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad to select the corresponding CD.



07 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

CONNECTING A TELEPHONE

* The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you. A list of mobile telephones with the best level of compatibility is available from the dealer network.

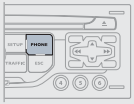
! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the Peugeot Connect Navigation must be carried out with the vehicle stationary. The ignition must be on.

1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function.
The last telephone connected is reconnected automatically.



2 

Press the PHONE button.



The list of telephones connected previously (4 maximum) appears on the multifunction screen. Select the telephone required for a new connection.

3 
For a first connection, select "Search phone" and press the dial to confirm. Then select the name of the telephone.

SEARCH PHONE



4 
Enter the authentication code on the telephone. The code to be entered is displayed on the screen.



i Once the telephone has been connected, Peugeot Connect Navigation can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes*.

1 

To change the telephone connected, press the PHONE button, then select Phone Menu and press the dial to confirm.



2 
Select "Connect phone". Select the telephone and press to confirm.

CONNECT PHONE



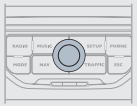
07 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

RECEIVING A CALL

1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the multifunction screen.

2 Select the "Yes" tab to accept or "No" to refuse and confirm by pressing the dial.

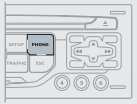
YES NO



3 PHONE

To hang up, press the PHONE button or press the dial and select "End call" then confirm by pressing the dial.

END CALL

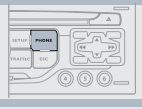


Press the end of the steering mounted control to accept the call or end the call in progress.

MAKING A CALL

1 PHONE

Press the PHONE button.



The list of the last 20 calls made and received in the vehicle appears under "Phone" Menu. You can select a number and press the dial to make the call.

2 Select the "Phone" Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

"PHONE" MENU

Select "Dial number", then dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad.

DIAL NUMBER



It is also possible to select a number from the address book. You can select "Dial from address book". The Peugeot Connect Navigation can record up to 4 000 entries.
Press the end of the steering mounted control for more than two seconds to gain access to the address book.

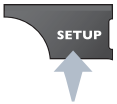
To delete a number, press the PHONE button then press and hold on a call number to display a list of actions including:
Delete entry
Delete list

08 CONFIGURATION

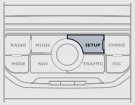
SETTING THE DATE AND TIME

The SETUP function gives access to the following options: System language, Date & Time, Display (Brightness, Colour, Map colour), Vehicle, Units, System.

! These settings must be re-entered if the battery has been disconnected.

1 

Press the SET UP button.



2 
Select the "Date & Time" function and press the dial to confirm.

DATE & TIME

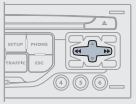


3 
Select the "Set date & time" function and press the dial to confirm.

SET DATE & TIME



4 
Set the parameters one by one using the direction arrows and confirm by means of the dial.



5 
Select the "Date format" function and press the dial to confirm.



6 
Confirm the format required using the dial.
Select the "Time format" function and press the dial to confirm.



Confirm the format required using the dial.
Pressing the SET UP button for more than 2 seconds gives access to:

DESCRIPTION OF THE UNIT

GPS COVERAGE

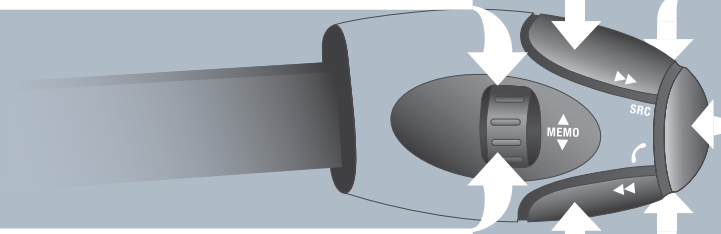
DEMO MODE

09 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

RADIO: change to the next radio station on the list.
Long press: automatic search for a higher frequency.
CD/CD CHANGER: selection of the next track.
CD/CD CHANGER: continuous press: fast forward play.

RADIO: selection of the next stored station.
CD CHANGER: selection of the next CD.
Selection of the next entry in the address book.

Volume increase.



- Change the sound source.
- Make a call from the address book.
- Pick up/Hang up the telephone.
- Press for more than 2 seconds: access to the address book.

Mute: by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound: by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Volume decrease.

RADIO: selection of the previous stored station.
CD CHANGER: selection of the previous CD.
Selection of the previous entry in the address book.

RADIO: change to the previous radio station on the list.
Long press: automatic search for a lower frequency.
CD/CD CHANGER: selection of the previous track.
CD/CD CHANGER: continuous press: fast backward play.

10 SCREEN MENU MAP

1 MAIN FUNCTION
2 CHOICE A
3 choice A1
3 choice A2
2 CHOICE B...

TRAFFIC

1 "TRAFFIC" MENU
2 MESSAGES ON ROUTE
2 ONLY WARNINGS ON ROUTE
2 ALL WARNING MESSAGES
2 ALL MESSAGES
2 GEO. FILTER
3 Within 2 miles (3 km)
3 Within 3 miles (5 km)
3 Within 6 miles (10 km)
3 Within 30 miles (50 km)
3 Within 60 miles (100 km)

MUSIC

1 "MUSIC" MENU
2 SELECT MUSIC
2 SOUND SETTINGS
3 Balance/Fader
3 Bass/Treble
3 Equalizer
4 Linear
4 Classic
4 Jazz
4 Rock/Pop
4 Techno
4 Vocal
3 Loudness
3 Speed dependent volume
3 Reset sound settings

MUSIC

1 "RADIO" MENU
2 WAVEBAND
3 FM
3 AM
2 MANUAL TUNE
2 SOUND SETTINGS
3 Balance/Fader
3 Bass/Treble
3 Equalizer
4 Linear
4 Classic
4 Jazz
4 Rock/Pop
4 Techno
4 Vocal
3 Loudness
3 Speed dependent volume
3 Reset sound settings



- 1 **"NAVIGATION" MENU**
  - 2 **ABORT GUIDANCE/RESUME GUIDANCE**
  - 2 **DESTINATION INPUT**
    - 3 **Address input**
      - 4 Country
      - 4 City
      - 4 Street
      - 4 House number
      - 4 Start route guidance
      - 4 Postal code
      - 4 Save to address book
      - 4 Intersection
      - 4 City district
      - 4 Geo position
      - 4 MAP
    - 3 **Navigate HOME**
    - 3 **Choose from address book**
    - 3 **Choose from last destinations**
    - 3 **TMC station information**
  - 2 **STOPOVERS**
    - 3 **Add stopover**
      - 4 Address input
      - 4 Navigate HOME
      - 4 Choose from address book
      - 4 Choose from last destinations
    - 3 **Rearrange route**
    - 3 **Replace stopover**
    - 3 **Delete stopover**
    - 3 **Recalculate**
      - 4 Fast route
      - 4 Short route
      - 4 Optimized route
  - 2 **POI SEARCH**
    - 3 **POI nearby**
    - 3 **POI near destination**
    - 3 **POI in city**
    - 3 **POI in country**
    - 3 **POI near route**
  - 2 **ROUTE OPTIONS**
    - 3 **Route type**
      - 4 Fast route
      - 4 Short route
      - 4 Optimized route
    - 3 **Route dynamics**
      - 4 Traffic independent
      - 4 Semi-dynamic
    - 3 **Avoidance criteria**
      - 4 Avoid motorways
      - 4 Avoid toll roads
      - 4 Avoid ferries
    - 3 **Recalculate**
  - 2 **SETTINGS**
    - 3 **Navi volume**
    - 3 **POI categories on MAP**
    - 3 **Set parameters for risk areas**
      - 4 Display on MAP
      - 4 Visual alert
      - 4 Sound alert



- 1 **"PHONE" MENU**
  - 2 **DIAL NUMBER**
  - 2 **DIAL FROM ADDRESS BOOK**
  - 2 **CALL LISTS**
  - 2 **CONNECT PHONE**
    - 3 **Search phone**
    - 3 **Phones connected**
      - 4 Disconnect phone
      - 4 Rename phone
      - 4 Delete pairing
      - 4 Delete all pairings
      - 4 Show details
  - 2 **SETTINGS**
    - 3 **Select ring tone**
    - 3 **Phone/Ring tone volume**
    - 3 **Enter mailbox number**

* Available according to model.



- 1 **"SETUP" MENU**
  - 2 **SYSTEM LANGUAGE***
    - 3 **Deutsch**
    - 3 **English**
    - 3 **Español**
    - 3 **Français**
    - 3 **Italiano**
    - 3 **Nederlands**
    - 3 **Polski**
    - 3 **Portuguese**
  - 2 **DATE & TIME***
    - 3 **Set date & time**
    - 3 **Date format**
    - 3 **Time format**
  - 2 **DISPLAY**
    - 3 **Brightness**
    - 3 **Colour**
      - 4 Pop titanium
      - 4 Toffee
      - 4 Blue steel
      - 4 Technogrey
      - 4 Dark blue
    - 3 **MAP colour**
      - 4 Day mode for MAP
      - 4 Night mode for MAP
      - 4 Auto. Day/Night for MAP
  - 2 **VEHICLE***
    - 3 **Vehicle information**
      - 4 Alert log
      - 4 Status of functions
  - 2 **UNITS**
    - 3 **Temperature**
      - 4 Celsius
      - 4 Fahrenheit
    - 3 **Metric/Imperial**
      - 4 Kilometres (Consumption: l/100)
      - 4 Kilometres (Consumption: km/l)
      - 4 Miles (Consumption: MPG)
  - 2 **SYSTEM**
    - 3 **Factory reset**
    - 3 **Software version**
    - 3 **Automatic scrolling**

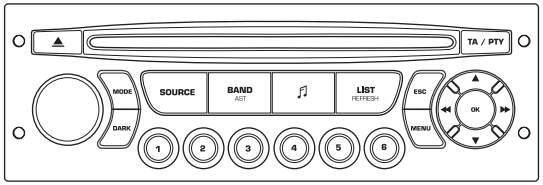
FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the Linear musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the Audio section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Because of their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...)	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The TA box is ticked. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The time taken to calculate a route sometimes seems longer than usual.	The performance of the system may slow down temporarily if a CD is being copied onto the Jukebox at the same time as a route is being calculated.	Wait until the CD has been copied or stop the copying before starting the guidance function.
I receive a speed camera alert for a camera which is not on my route.	The system announces all speed cameras located in a conical zone forward of the vehicle. It may detect speed cameras on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom the map to view the exact position of the speed camera.
The audible speed camera alert is not working.	Audible alerts are not active.	Activate audible alerts in Navigation Menu, Settings, Set parameters for risk areas.
	The alert volume level is set to minimum.	Increase the speed camera alert volume.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 3 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 3 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select GPS coverage).
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.
The route is not calculated successfully.	The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a motorway with tolls).	Check the exclusion criteria.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a long waiting time after inserting a CD.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds.	This phenomenon is normal.
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be deactivated or the equipment may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is activated. - Check that your telephone is visible.
A telephone connected by Bluetooth is inaudible.	The volume level depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the Peugeot Connect Navigation volume setting, possibly to maximum, and increase the telephone volume level if necessary.



Peugeot Connect Sound

AUDIO EQUIPMENT/BLUETOOTH SYSTEM

Your Peugeot Connect Sound is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer for configuration of the system.

For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.
When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes.

CONTENTS

- 01 First steps p. 302
- 02 Main menu p. 303
- 03 Audio p. 304
- 04 Peugeot Connect USB p. 307
- 05 Bluetooth functions p. 310
- 06 Steering mounted controls p. 312
- 07 Configuration p. 313
- 08 Screen menu map p. 314
- Frequently asked questions p. 316

01 FIRST STEPS



1. On/Off and volume adjustment.

2. CD eject.

3. Selection of the display on the screen from the modes: Audio (AUDIO), Vehicle Diagnostics and Telephone (TEL) functions.

4. Selection of the source:
radio, audio CD/MP3 CD, CD changer, USB, Jack connection, Streaming.

5. Selection of the FM1, FM2, FMast and AM wavebands.

6. Setting audio options: front/rear balance, left/right balance, loudness, sound ambiences.

7. Display the list of local stations, of the tracks on the CD or of the MP3 directories.

8. Abandon current operation.

9. TA (Traffic Announcement) function on/off.
Long press: access to the PTY (Types of radio programme) mode.

10. Confirmation.

11. Automatic search for a lower/higher frequency.
Selection of previous/next CD, MP3 or USB track.

12. Selection of a lower/higher radio frequency.
Selection of the previous/next CD.
Selection of the previous/next MP3 directory.
Selection of the previous/next USB equipment directory/genre/artist/playlist.

13. Display the general menu.

14. Buttons 1 to 6:
Selection of a stored radio station..
Selection of a CD in the CD changer.
Long press: storing of a station.

15. The DARK button changes the display on the screen to improve driving comfort at night.
1st press: lighting of the top banner only.
2nd press: displaying of a black screen.
3rd press: return to the standard display.

02 MAIN MENU

AUDIO FUNCTIONS: radio, CD, USB, options.

TELEPHONE: hands-free kit, pairing, management of a call.

> MONOCHROME SCREEN C



VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS: alerts.

PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION: vehicle parameters, display, languages.

> MONOCHROME SCREEN A



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section of this chapter.

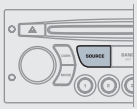
03 AUDIO

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

RADIO
SELECTING A STATION

1 

Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the radio.



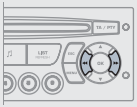
2 

Press the BAND AST button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.



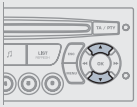
3 

Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



4 

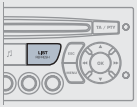
Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search of the radio stations.







Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum).
To update this list, press for more than two seconds.



RDS

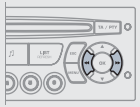
1 

Press the MENU button.



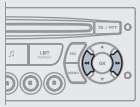
2 

Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS then press OK.



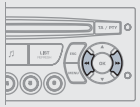
3 

Select the FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES function then press OK.



4 

Select ACTIVATE FREQUENCY FOLLOWING (RDS) then press OK.
RDS appears on the display.



! The RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

CD
PLAYING A CD

Insert circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.
Without pressing the EJECT button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

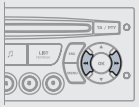
1 

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2 

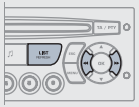
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



! Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

3 

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward.



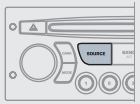
MP3 CD
PLAYING AN MP3 COMPILATION

Insert an MP3 compilation in the player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
While the CD is being played, the directory flow chart is not followed. All of the files are displayed on a single level.

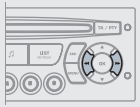
1 

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2 

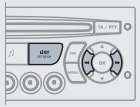
Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



! Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

3 

Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



03 AUDIO

MP3 CD
INFORMATION AND ADVICE

Empty CDs are not recognised and may damage the system.

The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet.
If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

The audio equipment will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

AUDIO/MP3 CD CHANGER*
PLAYING A CD

1



Insert the CDs in a multi-slot changer one by one.
On a single slot changer, press LOAD, select the number of the CD, then insert the CD, or press and hold LOAD and insert the CDs one by one.
Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD CHANGER.



2



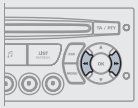
Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad to select the corresponding CD.



3



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forwards or rewind play.



* According to availability on the vehicle.

04 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

USING THE PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

The list of compatible equipment and the compression rates supported are available from PEUGEOT dealers.

1

This unit consists of a USB port and a Jack socket*. The audio files are transmitted from portable equipment such as a digital player or a USB memory stick to your Peugeot Connect Sound to be listened to via the vehicle's speakers.



2

USB key (1.1, 1.2 and 2.0) or iPod® of generation 5 or later:
- USB memory sticks should be formatted FAT or FAT 32 (NTFS not supported),
- the iPod® lead is essential,
- navigation through the file database is by means of the steering wheel controls,
- the iPod® software should be regularly updated for the best connection.



3

Other iPod® players of earlier generations and players using the MTP protocol*:
- play via Jack-Jack lead only (not supplied),
- navigation through the file database is from the portable equipment.



CONNECTING A USB MEMORY STICK

1



Connect the memory stick to the port, directly or using a lead. If the audio equipment is switched on, the USB source is detected as soon as it is connected. Play begins automatically after a delay which depends on the capacity of the USB stick.
The file formats recognised are .mp3 (mpeg1 layer 3 only), .wma (standard 9 only, 128 kbits/sec compression), .wav and .ogg.
The playlists types accepted are m3u, .pls, .wpl.

!

The system puts together playlists (temporary memory) created over a period which depends on the capacity of the USB equipment.
The other sources are available during this time.
The playlists are updated each time the ignition is switched off or each time a USB memory stick is connected.
When connecting for the first time, the classification suggested is by folder. When you reconnect, the classification selected previously is retained.

* According to vehicle.

04 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

USING THE PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

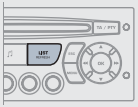
2

Press and hold LIST to display the different classifications.
Select by Folder/Artist/Genre/Playlist, press OK to select the classification required, then press OK again to confirm.

OK



- by Folder: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, classified in alphabetical order without following the flow chart.
- by Artist: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, classified in alphabetical order.
- by Genre: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- by Playlist: in accordance with the playlists recorded on the USB device.



3



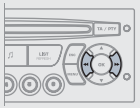
Press LIST briefly to display the previously selected classification.
Navigate through the list using the left/right and up/down buttons.
Confirm the selection by pressing OK.



4



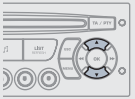
Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous/next track on the classification list currently being played.
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



5



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous/next Genre, Folder, Artist or Playlist on the classification list currently being played.



CONNECTING AN iPod® VIA THE USB PORT

1

The lists available are Artist, Genre and Playlist (as defined on the iPod®).
Selection and Navigation are described in steps 1 to 5 above.

!

Do not connect a hard disk or USB devices other than audio equipment to the USB port. This could damage your installation.

04 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

USING THE AUXILIARY SOCKET (AUX)
JACK/RCA CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

Do not connect a single piece of equipment via the USB port and the JACK socket at the same time.

The auxiliary socket, JACK or RCA, permits the connection of portable equipment (MP3 player...).

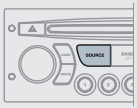
1

Connect the portable equipment (MP3 player…) to the JACK socket or to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) using a suitable cable (not supplied).

2



Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



ADJUSTING THE VOLUME OF THE AUXILIARY SOURCE

1

First adjust the volume of your portable equipment.



2



Then adjust the volume of your audio equipment.



The controls are displayed and managed via the portable equipment.



05 BLUETOOTH

BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE
SCREEN C

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used.
Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from the network. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

PAIRING A TELEPHONE

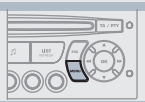
! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio equipment must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

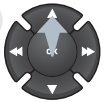
1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function.



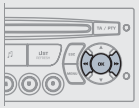
2 

Press the MENU button.



3 

In the menu, select:
- Bluetooth telephone function - Audio
- Bluetooth configuration
- Perform a Bluetooth search



4 A window is displayed with "Searching...".

5 The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.

! The TELEPHONE menu permits access to the following functions in particular: Directory*, Call list, Pairing management.

* If your telephone is fully compatible.

6 Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

7 A virtual keypad is displayed on the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits.
Confirm by pressing OK.



8 A message is displayed on the screen of the telephone chosen: to accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm by pressing OK.



9 If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.

10 "Pairing of Name_telephone successful" appears on the screen.
The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured.
The directory and the call list can be accessed after the synchronisation period.

! The pairing can also be initiated from the telephone.

05 BLUETOOTH

RECEIVING A CALL

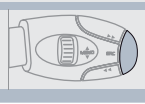
1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the multifunction screen.

2 

Select the YES tab on the display using the buttons and confirm by pressing OK.



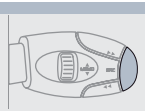
Press the steering mounted control OK to accept the call.



MAKING A CALL

1 From the Bluetooth telephone function Audio menu, select Manage the telephone call then Call, Call list or Directory.

2 Press the end of the steering mounted control for more than two seconds to gain access to your directory.
Or
To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.





BLUETOOTH AUDIO STREAMING
(AVAILABLE DURING THE YEAR)

! Wireless transmission of the telephone's music files via the audio equipment. The telephone must be able to manage the appropriate bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP/AVRCP).

1 Initiate the pairing between the telephone and the vehicle. This pairing can be initiated from the vehicle's telephone function menu or via the telephone's keypad. See steps 1 to 10 on the previous pages. During the pairing phase, the vehicle must be stationary with the key in the ignition.



2 Select the telephone to be connected from the telephone function menu.
The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

3 

Activate the streaming source by pressing the SOURCE button*. The tracks to be played can be controlled as usual via the buttons on the Radio control panel and the steering wheel controls**. The contextual information can be displayed on the screen.



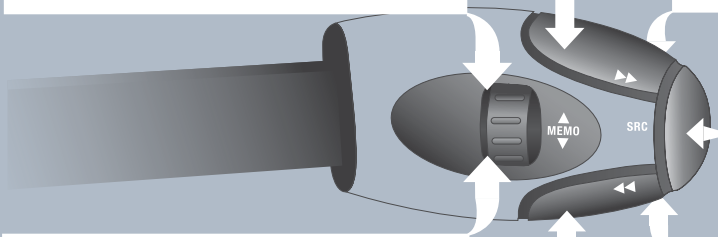
* In certain cases, playing of the Audio files must be initiated from the keypad.
** If the telephone supports the function.

06 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

RADIO: selection of the previous stored station.
CD CHANGER: selection of the previous CD.
USB: selection of the previous genre/artist/ directory from the classification list.
Selection of the previous item on a menu.

RADIO: automatic search for a higher frequency.
CD/CD CHANGER/MP3/USB: selection of the next track.
CD/CD CHANGER/USB: continuous press: fast forwards play.
Selection of the previous item.

Volume increase.



- Change of sound source.
- Confirmation of a selection.
- Pick up/Hang up the telephone.
- Press for more than 2 seconds: access to the telephone menu.

Mute: by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

The sound is restored by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Volume decrease.

RADIO: selection of the next stored station.
CD CHANGER: selection of the next CD.
USB: selection of the next genre/artist/ directory from the classification list.
Selection of the next item on a menu.

RADIO: automatic search for a lower frequency.
CD/CD CHANGER/MP3/USB: selection of the previous track.
CD/CD CHANGER/USB: continuous press: rewind play.
Selection of the next item.

07 CONFIGURATION

SETTING THE DATE AND TIME
SCREEN C

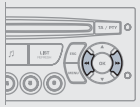
1 

Press the MENU button.



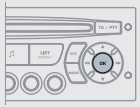
2 
Using the arrows, select PERSONALISATION CONFIGURATION.



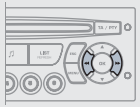


3 

Press to confirm the selection.

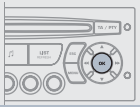


4 
Using the arrows, select DISPLAY CONFIGURATION.

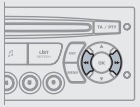


5 

Press to confirm the selection.

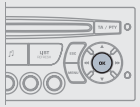


6 
Using the arrows, select ADJUST DATE AND TIME.



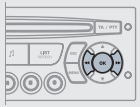
7 

Press to confirm the selection.



8 

Adjust the settings one by one confirming by pressing the OK button. Next select the OK tab on the screen then confirm.



08 SCREEN MENU MAP

monochrome A



- 1 RADIO-CD
  - 2 RDS SEARCH
  - 2 REG MODE
  - 2 CD REPEAT
  - 2 RANDOM PLAY
- 1 VEHICLE CONFIG*
  - 2 REV WIPE ACT
  - 2 GUIDE LAMPS
- 1 OPTIONS
  - 2 DIAGNOSTICS
    - 3 consult
    - 3 abandon
- 1 UNITS
  - 2 TEMPERATURE: °CELSIUS/°FAHRENHEIT
  - 2 FUEL CONSUMPTION: KM/L - L/100 - MPG

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

- 1 MAIN FUNCTION
  - 2 CHOICE A
    - 3 Choice A1
    - 3 Choice A2
  - 2 CHOICE B...

- 1 DISPLAY ADJUST
  - 2 YEAR
  - 2 MONTH
  - 2 DAY
  - 2 HOUR
  - 2 MINUTES
  - 2 12 H/24 H MODE
- 1 LANGUAGE
  - 2 FRANCAIS
  - 2 ITALIANO
  - 2 NEDERLANDS
  - 2 PORTUGUES
  - 2 PORTUGUES-BRASIL
  - 2 DEUTSCH
  - 2 ENGLISH
  - 2 ESPANOL

monochrome C

Press the OK dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen:

RADIO

- 1 activate/deactivate RDS
- 1 activate/deactivate REG mode
- 1 activate/deactivate radiotext

CD/MP3 CD/CD CHANGER

- 1 activate/deactivate Intro
- 1 activate/deactivate track repeat (the entire current CD for CD or CD Changer, the entire current folder for MP3 CD or MP3 Changer)
- 1 activate/deactivate random play (the entire current CD for CD or CD Changer, the entire current folder for MP3 CD, all of the folders of the current CD for MP3 Changer)

USB

- 1 activate/deactivate track repeat (of the current folder/ artist/genre/playlist)
- 1 activate/deactivate random play (of the current folder/ artist/genre/playlist)

08 SCREEN MENU MAP monochrome C



Pressing the MENU button displays:



- 1 **AUDIO FUNCTIONS**
  - 2 **FM BAND PREFERENCES**
    - 3 **alternative frequencies (RDS)**
      - 4 activate/deactivate
    - 3 **regional mode (REG)**
      - 4 activate/deactivate
    - 3 **radio-text information (RDTXT)**
      - 4 activate/deactivate
  - 2 **PLAY MODES**
    - 3 **album repeat (RPT)**
      - 4 activate/deactivate
    - 3 **track random play (RDM)**
      - 4 activate/deactivate



- 1 **VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS**
  - 2 **ALERT LOG**



- 1 **PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION**
  - 2 **DEFINE THE VEHICLE PARAMETERS***
  - 2 **DISPLAY CONFIGURATION**
    - 3 **video brightness adjustment**
      - 4 normal video
      - 4 inverse video
      - 4 brightness (- +) adjustment
    - 3 **date and time adjustment**
    - 3 **day/month/year adjustment**
      - 4 hour/minute adjustment
      - 4 choice of 12 h/24 h mode
    - 3 **choice of units**
      - 4 l/100 km - mpg - km/l
      - 4 °Celsius/°Fahrenheit
  - 2 **CHOICE OF LANGUAGE**

* The parameters vary according to vehicle.



- 1 **BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE**
  - 2 **BLUETOOTH CONFIGURATION**
    - 3 **Connect/Disconnect a device**
    - 3 **Telephone function**
    - 3 **Audio Streaming function**
      - 4 Consult the paired device
      - 4 Delete a paired device
      - 4 Perform a Bluetooth search
  - 2 **CALL**
    - 3 **Calls list**
      - 4 Directory
  - 2 **MANAGE THE TELEPHONE CALL**
    - 3 **Terminate the current call**
    - 3 **Activate private mode**

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen. The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.
	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the memory stick.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge. The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio equipment switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

EXTERIOR



Remote control key.....78-81
- opening/closing
- anti-theft protection
- starting
- battery

Wiper controls.....98-100
Changing a wiper blade.....194

Boot.....88
- opening/closing
- emergency release

Temporary puncture repair kit....164-168
Changing a wheel.....172, 177
- tools
- removing/refitting

Parking sensors.....154-155
Towbar.....197
Towing.....195

Changing bulbs.....182-183
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps

Accessories.....199-200
Roof bars.....198
Panoramic sunroof.....90

Door mirrors.....75-76

Lighting controls.....93-96
Directional lighting.....97
Headlamp height adjustment.....96-97
Changing bulbs.....179-181
- front lamps
- foglamps
- direction indicator repeaters

Doors.....86-88
- opening/closing
- central locking
- emergency control

Alarm.....82-83
Electric windows.....84-85

Braking assistance.....130
Trajectory control.....131
Tyre under-inflation detection.....129
Tyre pressures.....168, 227

Fuel tank.....91-92



EXTERIOR



Remote control key.....78-81
- opening/closing
- anti-theft protection
- starting
- battery

Wiper controls.....98-100
Changing a wiper blade.....194

Accessories 199-200
Roof bars 198
Panoramic sunroof 90

Door mirrors.....75-76

Lighting controls 93-96
Directional lighting 97
Headlamp height adjustment.....96-97
Changing bulbs.....179-181
- front lamps
- foglamps
- direction indicator repeaters

Tailgate/Rear screen.....88-89
- opening/closing
- emergency release

Temporary puncture repair kit....169-171
Changing a wheel.....174, 177
- tools
- removing/refitting

Doors 86-88
- opening/closing
- central locking
- emergency control

Alarm 82-83
Electric windows.....84-85

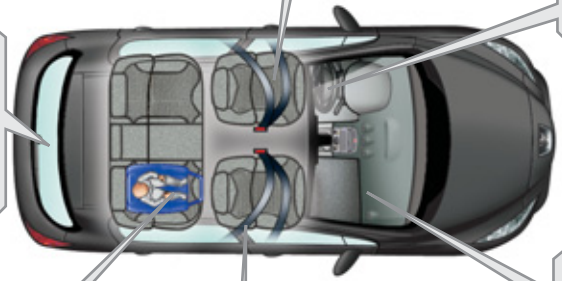
Parking sensors.....154-155
Towbar 197
Towing 196

Braking assistance 130
Trajectory control.....131
Tyre under-inflation detection 129
Tyre pressures.....227

Changing bulbs.....184-185
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamps

Fuel tank.....91-92

INTERIOR



Front seats.....63-66
Rear seats 67-68

Airbags 137-140

Boot fittings 109-110
- rear parcel shelf
- luggage retaining strap
- hooks
- stowing rings
- storage box

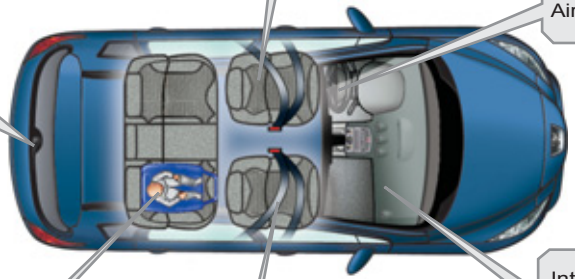
Interior fittings.....103-108
- glove box
- ashtray/12 V accessories socket
- mats

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag.....138

Child seats.....118-120, 122
ISOFIX child seats.....123-125
Child lock.....127

Seat belts.....132-133, 136

INTERIOR



Front seats.....63-66
Rear seats 67-68

Airbags 137-140

Boot fittings.....111-113
- rear parcel shelf
- 12 V accessories socket
- hooks
- stowing rings
- high load retaining net
- luggage retaining strap
- storage tray

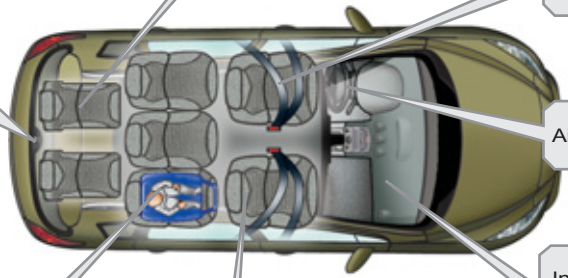
Interior fittings.....103-108
- glove box
- ashtray/12 V accessories socket
- mats

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag.....138

Child seats.....118-120, 122
ISOFIX child seats.....123-125
Child lock.....127

Seat belts.....132-133, 136

INTERIOR



Additional seats 71-72
Seat modularity..... 73-74

Boot fittings..... 114-117
- load space screen
- 12 V accessories socket
- hooks
- stowing rings
- high load retaining net
- rear armrests
- luggage retaining strap
- torch
- storage box

Seat belts..... 132-136

Airbags 137-140

Interior fittings..... 103-108
- glove box
- ashtray/12 V accessories socket
- mats

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag..... 138

Child seats..... 118-119, 121-122
ISOFIX child seats..... 123-124, 126
Child lock..... 127
Side blinds..... 117

Front seats..... 63-66
Rear seats 69-70

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

Instrument panels 22-25
Warning lamp 26-34
Indicators 34-37
Buttons 38-39
- check/service indicator/trip distance recorder
- lighting rheostat

Lighting controls 93-96
Headlamp height adjustment 96-97

Door mirrors 75-76
Electric windows 84-85

Speed limiter 150-151
Cruise control 152-153

Dashboard fuses 186-188
Opening the bonnet 157

Multifunction screens 40-51
Hazard warning lamps 128
Switch panel 16

Courtesy lamps 101
Seat belt/passenger's front airbag warning lamps display 133-134
Rear view mirror 76-77
Sun visor 104
Toll card/car park ticket windows 104

Wiper controls 98-100
Trip computer 52-55

Peugeot Connect Media 233-272
Setting the date/time 260
Peugeot Connect Navigation 273-300
Setting the date/timee 292
Peugeot Connect Sound 301-317
Setting the date/time 313

Ventilation 56-57, 60
Heating 58-59
Manual air conditioning 58-59
Digital air conditioning 61-62

Electronic gear control/automatic gearbox 143-146, 147-149
Parking brake 141

Steering wheel adjustment 77
Horn 128



TECHNICAL DATA - MAINTENANCE



Petrol engines.....201-203, 205-207, 209-210, 211-213
BioFlex engines.....204, 208, 210, 213
Diesel engines.....214-225
Dimensions.....226
Identification markings.....227

Running out of fuel, Diesel 158

Checking levels 161-162
- oil
- brake fluid
- power steering fluid
- coolant
- screenwash/headlamp wash fluid

Changing bulbs.....179-185
- front
- rear

Battery 192-193
Energy economy mode.....194

Engine compartment fuses.....189-191

Checking components 162-163
- air filter
- passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- brake pads/discs

Opening the bonnet.....157
Under the bonnet, petrol.....159
Under the bonnet, Diesel.....160

A

ABS and EBFD systems 130
Accessories 199
Accessories socket, 12 volt 105, 116
Access to the 3rd row 69
Additional seats 71
Adjusting headlamps 96, 97
Adjusting head restraints 65
Adjusting seat belt height 132
Adjusting the steering wheel 77
Air conditioning (digital) 57, 61
Air conditioning (manual) 57, 58
Air filter 162
Air vents 56
Alarm 82
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 130
Anti-pinch 84, 90
Anti-theft steering lock 79
Ashtray 105
Assistance call 130, 230, 231
Athermic windscreen 104
Audible warning 128
Audio/video sockets 255
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 311
Audio systems 217-233
Automatic gearbox 147, 163
Automatic illumination of headlamps 93, 95
Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps 128
Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers 98, 100
Auxiliary socket 289
Auxiliary sockets 255, 309

B

Battery 162, 192
Battery, remote control 80, 81
Battery recharge 193
Blind for panoramic sunroof 90
Bluetooth (hands-free) 256, 290, 310
Bluetooth (telephone) 256, 290, 310
Bonnet 157
Boot 88, 89
Boot lamp 102, 117
Boot storage trays 111
Brake discs 163
Brake lamps 182, 184
Brake pads 163
Brakes 163
Braking assistance system 130

C

Capacity, fuel tank 91
CD 306
CD changer 289, 306
CD MP3 ..... 251, 288, 305, 306
Central locking 78, 87
Changing a bulb 179-185
Changing a fuse 186-191
Changing a wheel 172, 174
Changing a wiper blade 100, 194
Changing the date 260, 292, 313
Changing the remote control battery 80
Changing the time 260, 292, 313
CHECK 38
Checking levels 161, 162
Checking the engine oil level 35
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 168
Checks 157-163
Child lock 127
Children 85, 118-127, 138
Child seats 118-126
Child seats, conventional 119-122
Child seats, Isofix 123-126
Closing the boot 78, 88, 89
Closing the doors 78, 86
Cold climate screen 199
Connectors, audio 105, 289, 307, 309
Control for panoramic sunroof blind 90
Control stalk, wipers 98, 99, 100
Coolant level 34, 161
Coolant temperature 34
Coolant temperature indicator 34
Courtesy lamps 101
Courtesy mirror 104
Cruise control 152
Cup holder 103
Curtain airbags 139, 140

D

Dashboard fusebox 187
Date (display) 260, 292, 313
Daytime running lamps 95, 179, 180
Deactivating the passenger airbag 138
Deadlocking 79
Defrosting 60
Dials and gauges 22-24
Diesel additive level 162

Diesel engine.....92, 158, 160, 214
Dimensions.....226
Dipped beam.....93, 179, 180
Dipstick.....35, 161
Directional lighting.....97
Direction indicators.....128, 179, 182, 184
Door mirrors.....75, 76
Doors.....86
Doors emergency control.....88
Door trays.....103
Driving positions (memorising).....66

E

EBA (Emergency braking assistance).....130
Economy mode.....194
Electric seats.....64
Electric window controls.....84
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).....130
Electronic engine immobiliser.....79, 81
Electronic gear control gearbox.....143
Emergency boot release.....88
Emergency braking system.....130
Emergency call.....130, 230, 231
Emergency warning lamps.....128
Energy economy mode.....194
Engine compartment.....159, 160
Engine compartment fusebox.....189
Engine oil level indicator.....35, 161
Engines.....201, 214
Environment.....81, 162, 193
ESP/ASR.....131

F

Filling with fuel.....91, 92
Fitting roof bars.....198
Fittings, boot.....109, 111, 114
Flashing indicators.....128
Folding the rear seats.....67, 69, 71
Front airbags.....137, 140
Front armrest.....106
Front foglamps.....94, 179, 181
Front head restraints.....65
Front parking sensors.....155
Front seats.....63, 64, 66
Front wash-wipe.....99
Fuel.....91, 92
Fuel filler cap.....91
Fuel filler flap.....91
Fuel gauge.....91
Fuel tank.....91, 92
Fuses.....186-191

G

G.P.S.....240, 277
Gear lever, automatic gearbox.....147
Gear lever, electronic gear control gearbox.....143
Gear lever, manual gearbox.....141
Gear shift indicator.....142
Glove box.....104
Grab handles.....103
Guidance.....240, 277

H

Halogen headlamps.....179
Hands-free telephone.....256, 290, 310
Hazard warning lamps.....128
Headlamp adjustment.....96, 97
Headlamps, directional.....97, 179
Headlamp wash.....99
Headlamp wash reservoir.....161
Heated seats.....66
Heating.....58, 61
Height and reach adjustment, steering wheel.....77
Hill start assist.....144
Hooks.....110, 112, 116
Horn.....128

I

Indicator/ warning lamps.....26-34
Indicators, direction.....128
Inflating accessories (using the kit).....164
Inputs for audio system.....255, 289, 309
Instrument panel lighting.....39
Instrument panels.....22-25, 38
Instrument panel screen.....22-24, 142
Interior fittings.....103
Interior mood lighting.....102
ISOFIX child seats.....123, 124
ISOFIX mountings.....123

J

Jack 172, 174
Jukebox (copy) 253
Jukebox (playing) 254

K

Keeping children safe 85, 118-127, 138
Key in ignition warning 80
Key with remote control 78, 79, 81
Knee airbag 138, 140

L

Labels, identification 227
Lamps, warning and indicator 26-34
Lateral airbags 139, 140
Level, brake fluid 161
Level, headlamp wash 99, 161
Level, power steering fluid 161
Levels and checks 159-162
Lighting, guide-me home 95
Lighting, interior 101, 102
Lighting bulbs (replacement) 179-185
Lighting on reminder 94
Lighting rheostat 39
Lighting stalk 93
Loading 73, 198
Load reduction mode 194
Load space cover 112, 115
Locating your vehicle 79
Locking from the inside 87
Long objects, transporting 73, 108
Luggage retaining strap ... 109, 111, 114

M

Main beam 93, 179, 180
Manual gearbox 141, 142, 163
Manufacturer's identification plates 227
Map reading lamps 101
Markings, identification 227
Mat 107
Menu, main 303
Mini fuel level 91
Modularity, seats 73
Monochrome screen 303, 314
Mountings for ISOFIX seats 123
MP3 CD 251, 288, 305, 306
Multifunction screen (with audio equipment) 42, 44, 47, 49, 51
Multifunction screen (without audio equipment) 40
Music media players 251, 287, 307

N

Navigation 240, 277
Net 116
Number plate lamps 182, 184

O

Oil filter 162
Oil level 35, 161
Opening the bonnet 157
Opening the boot 78, 88, 89
Opening the doors 78, 86
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind 90
Opening the rear screen 89
Opening the retractable screen 51
Operation indicator lamps 26

P

Paint colour code 227
Panoramic sunroof 90
Parking brake 141, 163
Particle emission filter 162
Passenger compartment filter 162
Petrol engine 92, 159, 201
PEUGEOT call button 231
Peugeot Connect Media 25, 49, 53, 233-272
Peugeot Connect Navigation 47, 273-300
Peugeot Connect Sound 301-317
PEUGEOT services 231
PIN code 258
Player, CD MP3 ..... 251, 288, 305, 306
Priming the fuel system 158
Protecting children 118-127, 138
Puncture 164, 169

R

Radio 250, 286, 304
Rear armrest 108
Rear foglamp 94, 182, 184
Rear head restraints 67
Rear parcel shelf 110
Rear parking sensors 154
Rear reading lamps 101
Rear screen (demisting) 60
Rear screen, opening 89
Rear seats 67, 69, 71
Rear view mirror 76, 77
Rear wash-wipe 99
Rear wiper 99
Recharging the battery 193
Reduction of electrical load 194
Refitting a wheel 178
Reinitialising the electric windows 85
Reinitialising the remote control 80
Remote control 78-81
Removable screen (snow shield) 199
Removing a wheel 177
Removing the mat 107
Repair kit, puncture 164, 169
Replacing bulbs 179-185
Replacing fuses 186-191
Replacing the air filter 162
Replacing the oil filter 162
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 162
Replacing wiper blades 100, 194
Resetting the service indicator 37
Resetting the trip recorder 38
Retractable colour screen 47, 49, 51
Rev counter 22-24
Reversing lamp 182, 184
Roof bars 198
Routine checks 161, 162
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 158

S

Safety for children 85, 118-127, 138
Satellite navigation system 240, 277
Screen, colour 16/9 47-50
Screen, monochrome C 44-46
Screen, multifunction (with audio equipment) 42-51
Screen, multifunction (without audio equipment) 40-41
Screen-wash reservoir 161
Screen menu map 264, 294, 314
Screenwash fluid level 99, 161
Seat adjustment 63, 64
Seat belts 132-136
Seat configurations 73
Serial number, vehicle 227
Service indicator 36
Setting the clock 260, 292, 313
Short-cut menus 237, 276
Sidelamps 93, 179, 180, 182, 184
Side repeater 181
SIM card 258
Ski flap 108
Snow chains 199
Spare wheel 173, 175
Spectacles storage 103
Speed limiter 150
Speedometer 22-24
Stability control (ESP) 131
Starting the vehicle 80, 143, 147
Steering mounted controls 261, 293, 312
Stopping the vehicle 80, 143, 147
Storage ... 103, 106, 108, 109, 111, 114
Storage box 106, 114
Storage drawer 107
Storage wells 109
Storing the driving positions 66
Stowing rings 109, 111, 114
Sun visor 104
Synchronising the remote control 80
Systems, ASR and ESP 131

T

Table of weights 205, 217
Table position 65, 69, 71
Tables, aircraft 108
Tables of engines 201, 214
Tables of fuses 186
Technical data 201-227
Telephone 231, 256, 290, 310
Telephone, hands-free 256, 290, 310
Temperature control for heated seats 66
Temporary tyre repair kit 164, 169
Third brake lamp 182, 185
Time 260, 292, 313
TMC (Traffic info) 248, 284
Toll/car park cards 104
Tools 172, 174
Torch 117

Total distance recorder 38
Towbar 197
Towed loads 201, 214
Towing another vehicle 195, 196
Traction control (ASR) 131
Traffic information (TA) ... 249, 285, 286
Traffic information (TMC) 248, 249, 284, 285
Trip computer 52-55
Trip distance recorder 38
Tyre pressures 227
Tyre under-inflation detection 129

U

Under-inflation (detection) 129
Under floor storage 110
Unlocking 78
Unlocking from the inside 87
USB (Peugeot Connect) 105, 307
USB port 105, 307

V

Vehicle diagnosis 44
Vehicle identification 227
Ventilation 56-58
Voice commands 262

W

Weights 205, 217
Welcome lighting 96, 102
Window controls 84
Windscreen zones for toll/ car park cards 104
Wipers 98, 100
Writing table 65

X

Xenon headlamps 179







This guide describes all of the equipment available.

The level of equipment fitted to each model marketed depends on its trim level, version and the specific requirements for the country in which it is sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given without any obligation. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update the current guide.

This document is an integral part of your vehicle. It should be passed on to the new user in the event of sale or transfer.

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this handbook is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

Printed in the EU

Anglais

03-10

I 11-10

II 02-11

Design by

PEUGEOT

Automobiles PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 75, avenue de la Grande-Armée 75016 PARIS
Tél. 33 (0)1 40 66 55 11 - Fax 33 (0)1 40 66 54 14
Adresse postale : Automobiles PEUGEOT B.P 01 75761 PARIS cedex 16 - Adresse Internet : http://www.peugeot.com
Société Anonyme au capital de 171 284 850 Euros - R.C.S. PARIS B 552 144 503. SIRET 552 144 503 00018. APE 341 Z



www.peugeot.com

Anglais
AN. 10308.0041